

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 412 156

SO 027 757

AUTHOR De Boe, David C.  
 TITLE Teaching Texas History: An All-Level Resource Guide. Second Revised Edition.  
 INSTITUTION Texas State Historical Association, Austin.; Texas Univ., Austin. Center for Studies in Texas History.  
 ISBN ISBN-0-87611-091-X  
 PUB DATE 1996-00-00  
 NOTE 187p.  
 AVAILABLE FROM Texas State Historical Association, 2/306 Richardson Hall, University Station, Austin, TX 78712; phone: 512-232-1501 (\$15.95 each; shipping/handling; \$4 first book, \$.75 each additional).  
 PUB TYPE Reference Materials - Bibliographies (131)  
 EDRS PRICE MF01/PC08 Plus Postage.  
 DESCRIPTORS Annotated Bibliographies; Educational Resources; Elementary Secondary Education; Geography; \*Local History; Social Studies; State Government; \*State History; United States History  
 IDENTIFIERS \*Texas

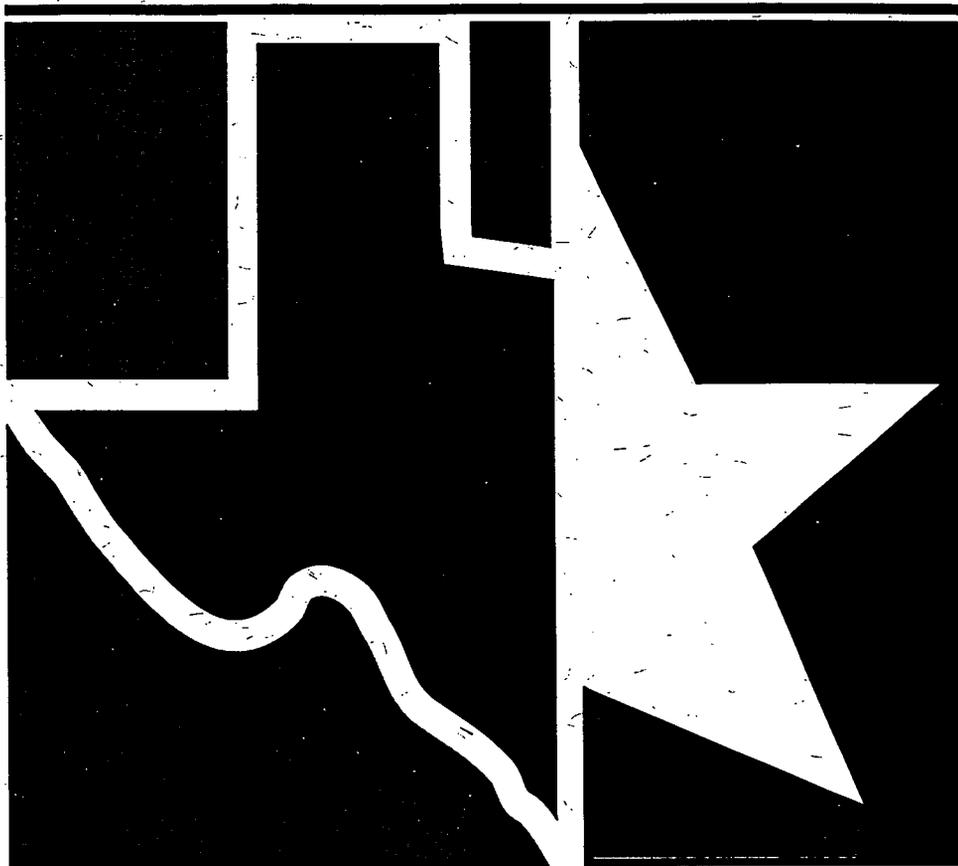
ABSTRACT

This annotated resource guide offers scores of teaching aids to enrich the teaching of Texas history and geography. This edition differs from its predecessors in several ways: videocassettes replaced the section on 16mm films; the section on "Traveling Museum Exhibits" was dropped because the items were too costly for use in the typical classroom; and additions were made to reflect the tremendous advances in technology made over the past few years. The guide's entries are organized by author, title, publisher/manufacturer/ distributor, price, and intended age group. The table of contents offers: (1) "Preface"; (2) "Videos"; (3) "Filmstrips and Slide/Tape Sets"; (4) "Instructional Aids"; (5) "The Internet"; (6) "Publications"; (7) "Juvenile Books"; (8) "Bibliographic Guide to Texas History for Teachers"; (9) "List of Distributors"; and (10) "Bringing History Home." (EH)

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made \*  
 \* from the original document. \*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

ED 412 156

# TEACHING TEXAS HISTORY



## AN ALL-LEVEL RESOURCE GUIDE

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE AND  
DISSEMINATE THIS MATERIAL  
HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

*David DeBoe*

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES  
INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

*David C. DeBoe*

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
Office of Educational Research and Improvement  
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION  
CENTER (ERIC)

This document has been reproduced as  
received from the person or organization  
originating it.

Minor changes have been made to improve  
reproduction quality.

• Points of view or opinions stated in this docu-  
ment do not necessarily represent official  
OERI position or policy.

SO 027 757

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

*Teaching Texas History:*  
*An All-Level Resource Guide*

★ ★ ★

*Second Revised Edition*

★ ★ ★

by

*David C. De Boe*

Published by

The Texas State Historical Association

in cooperation with

The Center for Studies in Texas History,  
The University of Texas at Austin

The publication of this *Guide* is made possible by a grant from the *Houston Chronicle*.

Copyright © 1985, 1989, 1996, The Texas State Historical Association, Austin, Texas.

No portion of this *Guide* except "Bringing History Home" may be reproduced without permission of The Texas State Historical Association.

ISBN: 0-87611-091-X

4

# Contents



Preface .....	<i>v</i>
Videos .....	<i>I</i>
Filmstrips and Slide/Tape Sets .....	<i>13</i>
Instructional Aids	
Atlases, Maps, and Other Geographic Teaching Aids.....	<i>19</i>
Booklets, Pamphlets, and Brochures .....	<i>27</i>
Posters, Bulletin Boards and Other Classroom Display Materials .....	<i>35</i>
Educational Games and Computer Software .....	<i>37</i>
The Internet .....	<i>41</i>
Publications	
Resource and Reference Books on Texas History/Geography .....	<i>43</i>
Spanish Language Materials .....	<i>69</i>
Materials for Students with Special Needs .....	<i>71</i>
Journals, Periodicals, Yearbooks, Encyclopedias, and Newspapers .....	<i>73</i>
Professional Publications Focusing on Methodology and Techniques .....	<i>77</i>
Juvenile Books .....	<i>87</i>
Bibliographic Guide to Texas History for Teachers .....	<i>121</i>
List of Distributors .....	<i>133</i>
Bringing History Home .....	<i>143</i>



## Preface

In recent years the methods of teaching history have changed so dramatically that today's students no longer have to feel that history is dull—a record of “old folks and dead folks.” Today's history teacher has available the materials to make history the most dynamic and vital subject in the curriculum. Within the scope of this second revised edition of *Teaching Texas History: An All-Level Resource Guide* are to be found scores of teaching aids, which, used pertinently, will enrich, make relevant, and add just plain fun to the teaching of Texas history and geography. These materials will help students see what history is really about.

It was more than twenty-five years ago that the Texas State Historical Association first became involved with helping teachers of Texas history. In 1969 the Association, the Texas Education Agency, and the twenty regional educational service centers came together to form the Texas History Education Advisory Committee, whose task it was to assess the teaching of Texas history and make recommendations toward its improvement. The committee proposed publishing a bibliography that would include supplementary materials to assist those who teach Texas history. The result: the publication, in 1973, of a thirty-five-page guide titled, *Texas History Teacher's Guide to Supplementary Materials and Professional Bibliography*.

A decade later, following consultation with the TEA and the Texas Committee for the Humanities, the TSHA updated and expanded the original guide. This later *Guide's* publication, in the summer of 1985, was timely: House Bill 246 called for an important curriculum change—the emphasis on local community studies in Grades Two and Three and the study of Texas history in Grade Four. (Texas history was, of course, still taught in Grade Seven.) A matching grant from the Texas Committee for the Humanities helped underwrite the cost of producing *Teaching Texas History: An All-Level Resource Guide*.

The present revision of the expanded *Guide* is its second. In 1989, with the help of Jane Manaster, who compiled relevant materials published since 1985, and Dr. Barbara F. Immroth, then associate professor at UT's Graduate School of Library and Information Science, who updated her “Fiction and Nonfiction Works about Texas for Juveniles,” we published the first revision, adding several new sections and more than three hundred entries not included in the 1985 edition.

For the current 1996 edition Jane Manaster again worked with us, contacting more than one hundred publishers regarding their materials relevant to Texas history teachers. This edition differs from its predecessors in several ways: the section on 16mm films was eliminated, videocassettes having made films irrelevant in most classrooms; the section on “Traveling Museum



Exhibits" was dropped, these items being too costly for use in the typical classroom; and, a number of additions were made to the *Guide* to reflect the tremendous advance in technology made over the past few years. The section on videocassettes has enjoyed an increase of almost exponential proportion. The Internet section, which is sure to undergo a similar rate of increase in future editions, is another significant addition to this edition.

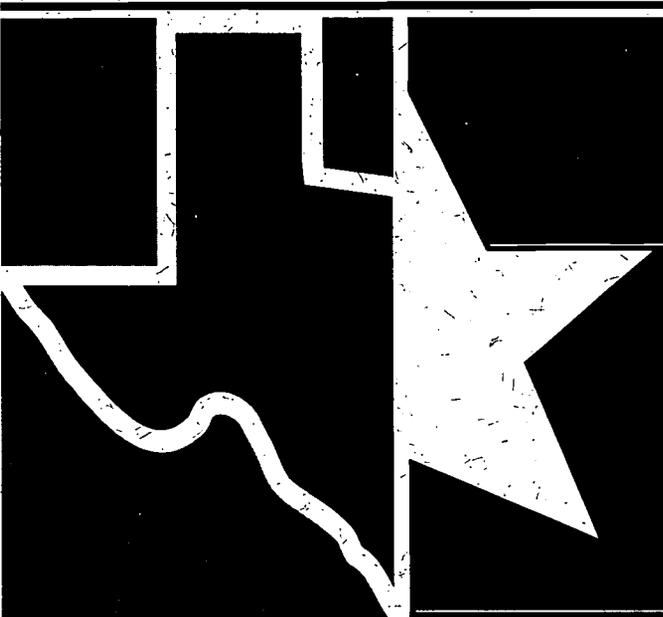
A note on the *Guide's* organization. Information needed to purchase each item is included within the entry. For example:

<sup>1</sup>Holt, Roy D. <sup>2</sup>CHILDREN INDIAN CAPTIVES. <sup>3</sup>Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. <sup>4</sup>\$5.95. <sup>5</sup>I.

1. the author, if pertinent to order an item
2. the title
3. the publisher (manufacturer) and/or distributor; please note that some publishers (Hendrick-Long, for example) not only publish their own materials, but also distribute materials for other publishers
4. price; included to give purchasing agents a rough idea of an item's cost; the distributor should be contacted for confirmation prior to placing an order
5. the intended age group; the system used is: P (Primary, Grades K-3); I (Intermediate, Grades 4-6); J (Junior High, Grades 7-8); S (Senior High, Grades 9-12); A (Adult); ML (Multi-Level)

The distributors are listed in this *Guide*, beginning on page 133.

David C. De Boe, Ph.D.  
Director of Educational Services  
Texas State Historical Association  
May, 1996



**Videos**



## Videos



*Each of the twenty Regional Education Service Centers has a collection of videos available on loan to subscribing school districts. A number of the videos in these collections are quite old, and are not found in the listing below. However, they remain valuable in certain settings, and we would recommend contacting your service center for a listing of their catalogued programs.*

**ADELANTE MUJERES! National Women's History Project.** 30 minutes. \$49.95. S, A.

A comprehensive study-guide accompanies the story of Mexican-American/Chicana women from the time of the Spanish arrival in the Western Hemisphere to the present. Major events and personalities are depicted in an upbeat story illustrated with archival and private-collection photographs. Available in English and Spanish.

**BIG BEND NATIONAL PARK VIDEO.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 30 minutes. \$29.95. I, J, S.

The video takes viewers to the park's most breathtaking spots, and includes elements of material culture as well as the natural wonders.

**BIG CITY TRAIL: THE URBAN INDIANS OF TEXAS.** Institute of Texan Cultures. 28 minutes. \$35.00. J, S, A.

Focusing on the 20,000 American Indians living in the Dallas/Fort Worth area, the production discusses the challenges these people face as they adjust to urban life, while resisting its homogenization.

**BLACK HERITAGE HOLIDAYS.** Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). 25 minutes. \$59.00. P, I.

Both Kwanzaa and Juneteenth are celebrations of events and concepts important to African Americans. In this video students join young Gregory for his family's observance of Kwanzaa, a holiday rooted in African culture, and Juneteenth, one of the days on which African Americans celebrate freedom.



**THE BUFFALO SOLDIERS.** The Early West. 47 minutes. \$19.95. ML.

The video shows the important role African Americans played in frontier history, and is filmed at locations where, more than a century ago, the legend of the Buffalo soldiers began. The video features a rare collection of Buffalo Soldier photographs.

**CARLSBAD CAVERNS & GUADALUPE MOUNTAINS NATIONAL PARKS VIDEO.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 53 minutes. \$29.95. I, J, S.

While this is primarily a physical-geography program—taking viewers deep into the caverns and then across the park's deep, forested canyons and hiking trails—it sets the stage for lessons on early settlement in the western region.

**CASTLE ON THE PLAIN.** Social Studies School Service. 31 minutes. \$49.00. I, J, S.

Westward expansion is encapsulated in this story of one family's travels from "Bent's Fort," and their encounters with traders, Native Americans, mountaineers, frontier wars, and the ongoing confrontation between Texans and Mexicans.

**A CAVALCADE OF TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 53 minutes. \$39.95. J, S.

This is a unique adventure for students interested in twentieth-century Texas. A rare technicolor movie from 1938, the eve of World War II, it was produced by Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer as a means of promoting the state for the Texas World's Fair Commission. The state has changed radically, and losses can be recognized as well as gains.

**CIRCLE OF LIFE: THE ALABAMA COUSHATTAS.** Institute of Texan Cultures. 24 minutes. \$35.00. ML.

Originally from the southeastern U.S., the modern tribe of Alabama-Coushattas in East Texas passes on ancient traditions from the old to the very young. A teacher's guide is included.

**DAVY CROCKETT: AMERICAN FRONTIER LEGEND.** Zenger Media. 50 minutes. \$19.95. I, J, S, A.

The video captures the range of images that have represented Crockett, during his life and in the popular imagination. The narration compliments original photographs and reenactment footage to give a well-rounded presentation that illustrates how one of the Alamo victims became a popular folk hero.

**DON'T MESS WITH TEXAS.** Texas Department of Transportation. 4.5 minutes. Return postage. P, I, J, S.

Features stars of the entertainment and sports professions performing in the popular anti-litter campaign. ½-inch and ¾-inch videotape.



**THE EDWARDS AQUIFER: A TEXAS TREASURE.** Edwards Aquifer Water District. 19 minutes. Available for loan from TEA Regional Service Centers; available for sale from Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$21.95. J, S, A.

Illustrations, computer animation, and live-action cinematography are brought together to introduce the hydrologic processes at work in the Aquifer. A teacher's guide is available.

**EL DIA DE LOS MUERTES: THE DAY OF THE DEAD.** Institute of Texan Cultures. 21 minutes. \$35.00. J, S, A.

The poignant celebration shows both Tejanos and non-Tejanos creating personal expressions of love for those who have died. A teacher's guide is included.

**FESTIVAL TIME IN TEXAS.** Texas Department of Transportation. 14.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Explores the sights and sounds of festivals, gatherings, and celebrations throughout Texas.

**FIRST TEXANS: AMERICAN INDIAN PEOPLE IN NORTH TEXAS.** Landmark Media, Inc. 29 minutes. ML.

Among the first inhabitants of North Texas, the Paleo-Indians were groups of migratory hunters, in search of bison, camels, mammoths, and mastodons. Over time, many settled in Texas. The Caddo Indians migrated to East Texas, the Wichitas settled in the north. The video explores the value systems of present-day American Indians in the metroplex, examining how they combine traditional beliefs and practices with a contemporary lifestyle.

**FROM THE GROUND UP: WEST TEXAS ADOBE.** Institute of Texan Cultures. 27 minutes. \$35.00. J, S, A.

The video explores traditions and lifestyles of families living in adobe homes along the Rio Grande in the Big Bend area. A teacher's guide is included.

**GONZALES: CRADLE OF TEXAS LIBERTY.** Institute of Texan Cultures. 20 minutes. \$20.00. J, S, A.

The history of Gonzales is addressed as well as contemporary attitudes about preserving history and tradition.

**HOUSTON, TEXAS.** Encyclopedia Britannica Educational Corp. 15 minutes. \$99.00. J, S.

Despite attempts at diversification, Houston owes its expansion to the success of the multi-faceted oil industry. When the world price of oil dropped, Houston suffered considerable economic distress. The video shows the fast growth of the city, and how it coped with the economic setback.



IN THE INTEREST OF TEXAS HISTORY: THE TEXAS HISTORICAL COMMISSION AND ITS PROGRAMS. Texas Historical Commission. 20 minutes. One way shipping and handling charge. J, S.

The Texas Historical Commission is the state agency whose mission is to preserve and promote the historic, architectural, and archeological heritage of the state of Texas. The program outlines the scope and dimensions of this work.

INSIDE THE EDWARDS AQUIFER. Edwards Aquifer Water District. 55 minutes. Available on loan from TEA Regional Service Centers. J, S, A.

Unique aspects of the Edwards Aquifer are introduced in this three-part video presentation that brings together computer animation, charts, and aerial and underwater photography. A teacher's guide is available.

THE KRUEGER FAMILY: TEXAS IMMIGRANTS. Institute of Texan Cultures. 28 minutes. \$20.00. ML.

The daughter of Russian-Jewish immigrants tells the story of her parents' flight to the United States from the repressive society of Czarist Russia at the turn of the century.

LAKE AUSTIN BRIDGE. Texas Department of Transportation. 12 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Describes the design and construction of the impressive suspension bridge on Loop 360 in Austin and its impact on the surrounding area. 1/2-inch and 3/4-inch videotape.

LAST BREEZE OF SUMMER. Carousel Films, Inc. Rental \$14.00 from Indiana University Instructional Support Services. 30 minutes. S, A.

Lizzy Davis, an African-American school principal reminisces about her adolescence in Ranford, Texas, in 1957 when she was chosen to be part of the school desegregation project.

LAW WEST OF THE PECOS. Texas Department of Transportation. 14.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Portrays colorful highlights and entertaining anecdotes in the life of Judge Roy Bean through a tour of the Department's Visitor Center in Langtry.

LONE STAR. KEDT-TV. 30 minutes per video. \$600.00 for series. ML.

*LONE STAR is a series of fifteen videos based on a book by T. R. Fehrenbach and produced by KEDT-TV/FM in Corpus Christi for national distribution on PBS. It has been edited for school use, reflecting curriculum presented in state-adopted textbooks, and the essential elements for fourth- and seventh-grade courses in Texas history. The series presents historical data about Texas, addressing geographic, economic, social, and human influences that have impacted the development of Texas from the time of the Republic to the present. Each program is thirty minutes. The titles and their contents are as follows:*



- **TEXAS: THE LONE STAR STATE** presents an overview of the entire series.
- **LIVING THE LEGEND** is an examination of the Texas mystique, and offers insight into the nature of the state and its history.
- **A LAND UNTAMED** introduces the Indian tribes and Spanish explorers who were the first to inhabit Texas.
- **THE FAITH AND THE FAILURE** shows how the mission system failed. It also addresses Mexico's independence from Spain.
- **A CLASH OF CULTURES** describes the Anglo settlers' revolt against Mexico.
- **A NEW REPUBLIC** covers the period when Texas achieved independence and established a new nation.
- **THE 28TH STATE** tells how, after nine years as an independent nation, Texas becomes a state.
- **YEARS OF CONFLICT** describes war between Texas and Mexico; secession from the Union; the Civil War; and Reconstruction.
- **COWBOYS** recaptures the early cattle drives to Kansas and Missouri after the Civil War.
- **THE CATTLE CULTURE** shows how the windmill and barbed wire changed the face of Texas.
- **OIL BOOM** describes the extreme wealth Texas has enjoyed since the turn of the twentieth century.
- **POLITICS—TEXAS STYLE** introduces the colorful, down-to-earth politicians of the early years of the twentieth century.
- **THE WINDS OF CHANGE** features Texans who brought the state national recognition, such as Garner, Rayburn, and Presidents Johnson and Bush.
- **ARMADILLOS AND PIGSKINS** looks at some of the recreational joys of contemporary Texas, like football games and local festivals.
- **THE STAR OF TOMORROW** shows how today's problems face a hope for the future.

**MARSHALL, TEXAS.** PBS. 120 minutes. \$69.95 plus \$6.00 shipping and handling. S, A.

Bill Moyers returns to his hometown to see how the civil rights movement and other social forces have changed small-town America.

**MISSIONS OF TEXAS** series. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. The series includes three videos. 15–20 minutes. \$29.95–\$39.95. Each is supplied with a teacher's guide with reproducible worksheets, time lines, glossaries, and answer keys. I, J, S.

- **THE ALAMO: FROM MISSION TO FORTRESS, 1718–1836.** An overview of the battle, accompanied by rousing music, provides a helpful introduction for students



learning Texas history. The video is supported by historical paintings and documents, and traces the mission from its founding to its fall in 1836 when 189 defenders met their deaths.

> "REMEMBER THE ALAMO! REMEMBER GOLIAD!" HEROES OF THE TEXAS REVOLUTION. Students are introduced to the early heroes, several of whom died at the Battles of the Alamo and San Jacinto and at the Goliad Massacre. The strategic placement of the missions is discussed, and their important contribution to Texas independence.

> THE SPANISH MISSIONS OF TEXAS. Traces the history of the Spanish Crown's establishment of the East Texas missions in the late seventeenth century, and their subsequent relocation to San Antonio. The video describes the purpose of their establishment and recaptures the daily life of those who lived and worked within them.

THE MISSIONS OF TEXAS. Texas Department of Transportation. 14.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Actor Ricardo Montalban narrates the historical highlights of the ten Spanish missions still extant in Texas. He describes both the drama and the humor related to the Spanish colonization of Texas and those to whom the missions ministered, with special emphasis on resultant Mexican-American heritage today.

MR. SPEAKER, MR. SAM. Sam Rayburn House Museum. 14.5 minutes. Loaned for the charge of one-way shipping and handling. ML.

Prepared as a pre-visit introduction for teachers planning a field trip to his home, the video traces the life and times of Sam Rayburn. Other teachers and students can enjoy learning about Rayburn from his roots in Fannin County to his lengthy service as Speaker of the U.S. House of Representatives.

ONE MILE. Texas Department of Transportation. 33.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

The building of the Houston Ship Channel Bridge is the subject of this chronicle. Awesome machinery and inspired technology combine to dazzle the viewer as the massive structure takes shape.

PANNA MARIA: THE HEART OF POLISH TEXANS. Institute of Texan Cultures. 17 minutes. \$35.00. J, S, A.

The integrity of America's first Polish settlement is maintained by descendants who continue to sustain the early traditions. A teacher's guide is included.

PEOPLE OF THE SUN. Institute of Texan Cultures. 56 minutes. \$45.00. J, S, A.

The video traces the struggle of the Tigua Indians as they strove to gain recognition as a tribe, walking the fine line between being Texans in El Paso and Pueblo Indians. A teacher's guide is included.



THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS. Star of the Republic Museum. 20 minutes. \$16.00. J, S, A.

Bill Moyers narrates a historic overview of the Texas Republic. The drama of the period is further emphasized by the original musical score composed by Charles Davis.

SAM HOUSTON AND TEXAS: A GIANT MAN FOR A GIANT LAND. Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). 24 minutes. \$129.95. I, J, S.

Traces the military career of Sam Houston, from its beginning with the army of Andrew Jackson to its climax at San Jacinto. The program is set in Houston's East Texas home in Huntsville. Narrated by E. G. Marshall, it explores Houston's colorful life as a soldier and a visionary statesman.

SAN ANTONIO, A CITY OF BEAUTY AND CHARM. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 20 minutes. \$29.95. ML.

This is an introduction to San Antonio that is ideal for student field trips. The Alamo, the missions, the museums, and other tourist attractions are visited. There is also footage of some of the newer outlying features.

SHAPING TOMORROW. NASA, Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center. 18.5 minutes. Return postage. J, S.

To motivate minority students to consider engineering as a career goal, the video features both engineers working at the Johnson Space Center and students at the Washington High School for Engineering Professions.

SHORT WALK TO EVERYWHERE. NASA, Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center. 18 minutes. Return postage. P, I.

Details the activities of the Space, Earth, Ocean Center (SEOC), an environmental summer residential camp for elementary school children. Students at the Armand Bayou Nature Center in Houston participate in hands-on activities that encourage environmental awareness.

SIEGE OF THE ALAMO. Social Studies School Service. 22 minutes. \$89.95. I, J.

An episode in the CBS "You Are There" series broadcast in the 1970s, this video recreates the atmosphere of the Alamo in "interviews" with Daniel Boone, Sam Houston, and Santa Anna.

SOCIAL STRATIFICATION. RMI Media Productions. 30 minutes. \$89.95. S.

The small town of Edgewood, Texas, is chosen as an example of social stratification, and serves as a microcosm in addressing both upward and downward mobility trends in the late-twentieth-century United States.



THE SOUTHWEST. Encyclopedia Britannica Educational Corp. 22 minutes. \$99.00. I.

An oil rig and a cattle ranch are considered in this study of the Spanish and Mexican influences on the Southwest. Also available in videodisc format.

SPANISH INFLUENCES IN THE UNITED STATES. Coronet/MTI Film and Video (Second edition). 13 minutes. \$59.00. I, J.

The video illustrates how Spanish influence in Florida and the Southwest is still to be found in language, architecture, and lifestyles.

SYMBOLS OF TEXAS. Institute of Texan Cultures. 6 minutes. \$20.00. P, I.

The videotaped slide show introduces the youngest students to the many symbols of Texas including the flag, the Alamo, the cowboy, the bluebonnet, the pecan tree, the armadillo, and the mockingbird. A teacher's guide is included.

TALKIN' TRASH TO TEXANS. Texas Department of Transportation. 4 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Rappin', rockin' release announcing the Great Texas Trash Off featuring Don't Mess With Texas celebrities. ½-inch and ¾-inch videotape.

TEXAS. Coronet/MTI Film and Video (Second edition). 21 minutes. \$79.00. I, J, S.

An award-winner of the Chicago International Film Festival, this video traces the eventful years from 1821 to 1845 when Texas began to achieve its rich heritage, rugged reputation, and distinctive economic position.

TEXAS: A NEW LOOK. Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). 4 videodiscs. 20 minutes (avg.) each. \$399.00. I, J.

This multicultural look at Texas correlates with major history and geography textbooks. Each of the discs is organized into three or four narrated tutorial segments, and concludes with an interactive menu. Features also include barcoding, audio, teacher materials, four teacher's guides, and forty-eight skill sheets.

TEXAS: FROM REVOLUTION TO RECONSTRUCTION. Forest Glen Productions; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$29.95 per video. I, J, S, A.

*This is a series of nine videos that are a compilation of scenic live footage, interviews, and collages of original photographs and documents. The videos lack the glossiness of major studio productions, but provide a broad-range portrayal of the period and events described. Two are annotated below. Other titles are: The Texas Revolution: From Anahuac to San Jacinto; Bandits, Bootleggers and Businessmen: A History of the Big Bend, Texas; The Big Thicket of Southeast Texas: A History; Pioneer Life in Texas: A Recreation; A History of the Guadalupe Mountains of West Texas and Carlsbad Caverns; The Home Front: Life in Texas During the Civil War; and Reconstruction in Texas.*



> **FRONTIER FORTS AND THE AMERICAN INDIAN WARS IN TEXAS: 1848–1888.** Across the state, the frontier forts are material reminders of the past, echoing the ghosts of civilians and militia personnel. On the video historians discuss the implications of this stage of American history, addressing the multicultural aspects, especially the displacement of Native Americans. Contemporary film is interwoven with archival photographs.

> **GRAVEYARD OF THE WEST: THE PECOS RIVER OF TEXAS, WHERE MYTH MEETS HISTORY.** The Pecos River is the backdrop for a series of vignettes about the terrain in West Texas where “myth meets history.” An informative narration accompanies contemporary film and archival photographs exploring the cultural history of the region.

**TEXAS AND THE MEXICAN CESSION.** Encyclopedia Britannica Educational Corp. 14 minutes. \$99.00. I, J, S.

The times of Stephen Austin, Davy Crockett, Jim Bowie, Santa Anna, Sam Houston, and the thousands who claimed Texas territory for themselves, are brought to life in this presentation.

**TEXAS HILL COUNTRY TRAIL.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 16 minutes. \$29.95; supporting guide \$2.95. I, J, S.

The video sets out from San Antonio, showing points of interest in the towns that developed from small communities established during and prior to the nineteenth century. These include Castroville, Bandera, Uvalde, Kerrville, Fredericksburg, Llano, Austin, New Braunfels, and San Marcos.

**TEXAS IN BLOOM.** Texas Department of Transportation. 18.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Narration and a musical score compliment seventy-one still photographs in exploring the abundance of blossoming wildflowers and other plants along Texas highways. ½-inch videotape.

**TEXAS—LIVE THE LEGEND.** Texas Department of Transportation. 28.5 minutes. Return postage. ML.

Frontier history, recreational activities, and diverse cultures are portrayed against backdrops of scenic splendor and living heritage.

**TEXAS NATURE CELEBRATION VIDEO: AN ECOLOGICAL ADVENTURE.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 26.5 minutes. \$27.50. I, J, S.

The state has six major ecological regions. The late John Henry Faulk narrates a tour on which prominent nature photographers have captured the visual essence of Texas. With this information in hand, students will have a backdrop for their history and geography courses.



TEXAS NATURE FILMSTRIP/VIDEO SERIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 15 minutes (avg.) each. Complete set of 12 programs is \$229.95 in video format. ML.

*Each of the programs in this series on the great Texas outdoors has almost fifty photographs and a narrated guide. The programs are as follows:*

- > TEXAS AMPHIBIANS. Introduces most of the amphibians throughout the state, though some of them are elusive and secretive. Dr. Robert Mitchell of Texas Tech University helped with the sequence on the rare blind cave-salamander.
- > TEXAS BIRDS. Texas, with a total of 545 bird species, heads the U.S. list in number of species to be seen. This video provides a tantalizing introduction to many of them.
- > TEXAS FORESTS. Describes how Texas ranks high in the production of wood products, taking viewers through the varied forests.
- > TEXAS GULF COAST. Covers both the physical landforms and the economic aspects of this varied region of Texas.
- > TEXAS INSECTS. The forty-seven insects shown in the program do not come close to the full complement in the state. Close-up shots are featured, and an account of how the insects play an indirect role in the Texas economy.
- > TEXAS LONGHORN. Drawings and color photographs trace the legendary longhorn from the Spanish bullfighting ring, over to Mexico, then north across the Rio Grande.
- > TEXAS MAMMALS. Discusses forty-seven mammals found in the state.
- > TEXAS POISONOUS SNAKES. This is a more technical program, looking at snakebite prevention, first aid, and the identification of Texas poisonous snakes.
- > TEXAS PRAIRIES. Provides insight on the settlement of the plains, looking at how wildlife vanished as people learned how the underground-water supplies nourished the rich soils.
- > TEXAS REPTILES. Offers an introduction to the snakes, turtles, lizards, and the alligator.
- > TEXAS TREES. Reveals the importance of Texas trees and their products. It shows what some of these products are, and details interesting facts about the trees themselves.
- > TEXAS WILDFLOWERS. Shows representative blooms from the four thousand different kinds of wildflowers that color the state from the Piney Woods and Gulf Coast beaches to the Chihuahuan desert in the western reaches.

TEXAS VIDEO LIBRARY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 14.5–17 minutes each. \$249.50 set of 10 videos; \$29.95 each. Resource guides \$2.95 each. I, J, S.

*This series of ten videocassettes is available with closed captioning. The accompanying resource guides tie in with graded curriculum studies, and include reproducible worksheets, video transcripts, and cross-indexed bibliographies. The titles are as follows:*



- TEXAS: LAND OF LEGENDS. Presents an educational and entertaining collage of events representing the cultural diversity and beauty of the state.
- TEXAS BUSINESS. Ten Texans are interviewed from a variety of enterprises, revealing that the economy reaches beyond cattle, cotton, and oil.
- TEXAS CAPITOL TOUR. Describes the Capitol prior to recent restoration.
- TEXAS FESTIVALS. Participates in several favorite and familiar festivals.
- TEXAS HISTORY TIME LINE. Draws into coherent sequence a host of elements in Texas history.
- TEXAS INDEPENDENCE TRAIL. Covers the ground trodden by early patriots prior to independence from Mexico, highlighting the San Jacinto Battleground and the Capitol.
- TEXAS MISSIONS. Tells of the founding and role of ten missions.
- TEXAS SYMBOLS. Shows official and unofficial symbols ranging from the flag to the San Jacinto Monument.
- TEXAS TRANSPORTATION TIME LINE. Addresses the development of transportation from prehistory until today. The video combines live action and animation.
- TEXAS WILDFLOWERS. Shows the ecological as well as the aesthetic function of wildflowers. The video includes the legend of the bluebonnet.

TEXAS VIDEOS FROM THE TEXAS PARKS AND WILDLIFE DEPARTMENT. W. S. Benson and Co. 10 videos. 30 minutes each. \$29.95 each. P, I, J, S, A.

*The titles are as follows:*

- CLEAR COOL WATERS. Focuses on the Edwards Aquifer in the San Antonio region, as well as the Comal and San Marcos Aquifers.
- DESTINATIONS: THE BEST OF TEXAS PARKS AND WILDLIFE. Tours the state's most picturesque natural attractions.
- DOWN UNDER TEXAS. Explores the subterranean world of Texas caves.
- ENDANGERED PLANTS: OUR CHOICE. Focuses on Texas's endangered plants and the efforts being made to save them.
- ENDANGERED TEXAS. Looks at Bald Eagles and Least Terns to see how humans have altered the fragile habitat of two birds.
- INDEPENDENCE. Tells the story of the men who gathered at Washington-on-the-Brazos to declare independence from Mexico.
- LIFE ACROSS CENTURIES. Portrays several historic sites including the Sauer-Beckmann Living History Farm, Fort McKavett, and the Fulton Mansion.
- LIFE IN THE COASTAL PLAINS. Views the Houston Ship Channel, off-shore oil, and the lifestyles of shrimpers and Vietnamese fishermen.



- > THE ROCK ART OF TEXAS. Noted archaeologists reflect on the beauty and mystery of this ancient art.
- > TEXAS COASTAL WETLANDS. Focuses on the challenge of maintaining the valuable wildlife habitat of the Texas coast.

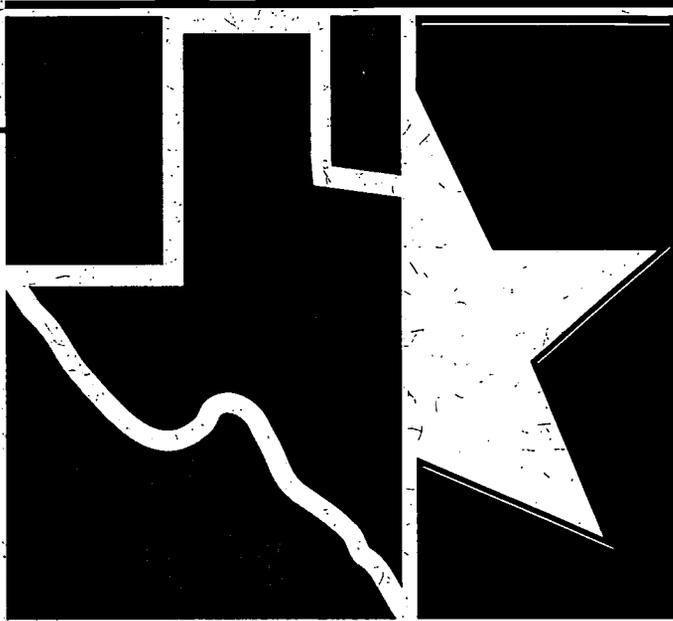
TEXAS WILD. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 8.5 minutes. \$21.95. I, J, S.

John Henry Faulk brings abstract concepts to life from a South Texas thornbush community. The Texas Association of Museums chose this descriptive, ecological interpretation for a gold citation for excellence. The video is supported by a copy of the script, student worksheets, and activities.

TWO GRASSLANDS: TEXAS AND IRAN. Coronet/MTI Film and Video. 15 minutes. \$59.00. I, J.

In comparing the Edwards Plateau region of Texas and the steppes of Iran, the video shows students how comparable landforms may still result in differences in the history and development of two regions.

# TEACHING TEXAS HISTORY



**Filmstrips &  
Slide/Tape Sets**



## Filmstrips and Slide/Tape Sets



ACCORDIONS ACCORDING TO TEXAS. Texas Folklife Resources. Audio program. 104 minutes. \$15.00. ML.

Three audiocassettes feature thirteen eight-minute segments from a radio series that explores the cross-cultural meeting place brought about by the accordion in Texas musical tradition.

AFRICAN-AMERICAN TEXANS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette programs. 20 minutes. \$30.00 each; slides \$25.00 each. I, J.

Two ten-minute programs make up this series. *The African-Americans to 1900* outlines the African American contributions to major conflicts, cattle raising, frontier defense, and settlement over the past 450 years. *The Wallace Brand: Ranching by a Black Texas Family* travels to the ranch of an African-American Texas cowboy who started ranching over a century ago. His son-in-law and grandson are interviewed.

BORDERLANDS. Texas Folklife Resources. Audio programs. \$15.00 (CD); \$10.00 (cassette). ML.

Historic and contemporary recordings of the Texas-Mexico border music are available in compact disc or audiocassette format. Music of the Native Americans of southern Arizona are also heard, and extensive notes are included.

ETHNIC TEXANS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette programs. 7-10 minutes each. \$30.00 each; slides \$25.00 each. I, J.

These five filmstrips demonstrate the historic role played by Danish, French, Jewish, and Czech Texans, and by settlers in the first Polish colony of Panna Maria.

EVENTS IN THE PRE-HISTORY OF TEXAS. Texas Historical Commission, Office of the State Archaeologist. Filmstrip/cassette program. 15 minutes. One-way shipping and handling charge. I, J, S, A.

This program provides an archaeological look at the development of early Texan cultures.



GEOGRAPHY OF THE UNITED STATES: SOUTH CENTRAL STATES. Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). Filmstrip/cassette program. 12 minutes. \$39.00. I.

Students gather a potpourri of the region's history, significant tourist attractions, and cultural distinctions. A teacher's guide is included.

GERMAN TEXANS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette programs. 5-13 minutes. \$20.00-\$35.00 per filmstrip; slides \$25.00 each. I, J.

This three-part series includes: 1) *The Cat Springs Germans*, featuring a community of Germans who settled in 1831 and significantly impacted the agricultural development of the state; 2) *The Easter Fires of Fredericksburg*, describing the origins of the custom of the Easter fires; 3) *Elisabet Ney: Artist, Woman, Texan*, introducing students to the life-sized statues of Sam Houston and Stephen F. Austin, and providing an overview of the German-born artist and her years in Texas, her adopted homeland. A study guide with numerous learning activities is included.

HISTORY IS MY HOME: A SURVEY OF TEXAS ARCHITECTURAL STYLES. Texas State Historical Association. Filmstrip/cassette program. 35 minutes. \$10.00. J, S.

This three-part program on Texas architecture includes: *European Origins and the Early 19th Century*, *The Victorian Period*, and *The Twentieth Century*. A teacher's guide with glossary is also included.

IMAGES OF PAST AND PRESENT: THE TEXAS POST OFFICE MURALS. Texas Historical Commission. Filmstrip/cassette program. One-way shipping charge. J, S.

Shows murals commissioned during the 1930s and 1940s by the Treasury Section of Fine Arts. Extant murals are shown.

INDIAN TEXANS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette. 7-8 minutes each. \$20.00-\$25.00 each; slides \$25.00 each. I, J.

A three-part series: 1) *The Indian Texans* highlights the Dallas Intertribal Council's annual ceremonies; 2) *The Alabama-Coushatta Indians* presents the early and enduring customs of the East Texas tribe; 3) *The Tigua Indians: Our Oldest Texans* describes the settlement at Ysleta, near present-day El Paso, and the Tigua's path to self-sufficiency.

JUNETEENTH AND OTHER FREEDOM CELEBRATIONS. Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). Filmstrip/cassette program. 12 minutes. \$39.00. I, J.

Commemorating the June 19, 1865, announcement in Galveston by General Gordon Granger that slavery was ended, the day is celebrated by African-American communities throughout the country.

LANDMARKS IN THE HISTORY OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 14-18 minutes. \$21.95-\$24.95 each; *The Fall of the Alamo*. 39 minutes. \$29.95. I, J, S.

Series of ten filmstrips about personalities of the Texas past and the story of the fall of the Alamo. The informative narration draws on authentic documents and photographs. Historical figures featured include James Bowie, James Stephen Hogg, Samuel T. Rayburn, William Sydney Porter (O. Henry), John Nance Garner, Stephen Fuller Austin, Sam Houston, Judge Roy Bean, and Lyndon B. Johnson. The cassettes accompanying each film strip run between fourteen and eighteen minutes, except for the 39-minute accompaniment to *The Fall of the Alamo*. A teacher's guide is included.

**THE LEGEND OF THE BLUEBONNET and THE LEGEND OF THE INDIAN PAINT-BRUSH.** Filmstrip/cassette programs. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$32.95 each. P.

Tomie de Paolo's two classic tales of the legend of the state flower and of an Indian brave who dreams of painting the sunset are introduced in a visual/auditory medium.

**LIFT EVERY VOICE.** Texas Folklife Resources. Audio program. 78 minutes. \$10.00. ML.

The thirteen segments, each six minutes in length, are drawn from a radio series chronicling fifty years of African-American gospel music in Texas.

**LONE STAR LEGACY: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE FOLK ART OF TEXAS.** Texas Folklife Resources. 14 minutes. Rental \$25.00. Purchase \$100.00. Shipping and handling \$5.00. ML.

The rich traditional arts and crafts of Texas—as varied as piñatas, quilts, and saddles—are explored in the slide/tape program, introducing students to the folk culture of Texas. Scripts, slide lists, and a teacher's guide are included.

**MISSIONS IN THE HISTORY OF TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 35 minutes. \$34.95. I, J, S.

Franciscan missions were established by Franciscan priests before the end of the seventeenth century. Over one hundred frames discuss the reasons for their founding, the causes of unrest that led to their ultimate failure, and the interaction among the Spanish, French, and Native Americans involved.

**PAUL AND LISA MOVE TO TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 13 minutes. \$35.00. P.

Adapted from Jan Hunter and Deborah Jensen's book, the program introduces students in K-4 to basic facts every Texan should know. The song "Texas, Our Texas" is featured, with the words shown on the screen to accompany the music. A teacher's guide includes classroom activity suggestions.

**SAN JACINTO DAY: A TEXAS HOLIDAY.** Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). Filmstrip/cassette program. 10 minutes. \$39.00. P, I, J.

The program commemorates April 21, 1836, the date Texas achieved independence from Mexico. Scenes highlight the celebrations during the 1986 Sesquicentennial.



SPANISH AND MEXICAN TEXANS. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette programs. 6–11 minutes each. \$25.00–\$30.00 each; slides \$25.00 each. P, I.

The five-part series features three historical programs and two programs highlighting traditional folk medicine. 1) *The Mexican Texans to 1865* is told through biographies of notable individuals; 2) *Spanish Missions in Colonial Texas* demonstrates the influence of the mission in the development of the state; 3) *Spanish Ranching in Texas* highlights the role of Mexican *vaqueros*, or cowboys, and their work; 4) *Don Pedrito Jaramillo: Folk Healer* introduces the legendary healer of South Texas who died in the early years of the twentieth century; 5) *Grandmother's Tea: Mexican Herbal Remedies* enables students to see the Mexican-American use of herbs in folk medicine as a distinctive cultural feature.

SYMBOLS OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Available in filmstrip/cassette and VHS formats, priced respectively at \$30.00 and \$20.00. P.

Numerous official and unofficial Texas symbols are illustrated and supported by activities correlated with the essential elements.

TEXANA SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette programs. \$30.00; slides \$25.00.

The three-part series includes: 1) *Built in Texas*, designed to help Texans recognize and become involved in their built environment; 2) *Jefferson: The Old South in Texas*, telling the story of Jefferson's origins and the decline and later rebirth of the Old South; and 3) *Texas and the American Revolution*, showing the limited participation of Texans in the American Revolution, and the immediate impact and long-term influence of Spanish Texas as a result of the conflict.

TEXAS HISTORY: SET 1 AND SET 2. Associated Educators. Filmstrips \$70.00 per set; cassettes \$54.00 per set. I, J.

The sets are arranged chronologically, and have been presented in Texas classrooms for over twenty years. Set 1 includes: *Indians of Texas*, *Exploration of Texas*, *The Mission Era*, *The Age of Fillibusters*, *Texas under the Mexican Flag*, and *The Texas Revolution*. Set 2 includes: *The Republic of Texas*, *Early Statehood*, *The Civil War Era*, *Recovery and Advance*, *Texas in the Early 20th Century*, and *Modern Texas*.

TEXAS HISTORY: TIMES OF CHALLENGE, TIMES OF CHANGE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 20 minutes each. \$195.00 for the six-part series. J.

The titles in this series of Texas history are: *Exploration and Conquest*, *Spanish and French Settlement*, *The Anglo-Americans Arrive*, *The Revolution and Independence*, *Republic and State*, and *The Civil War and After*. A teacher's guide with suggested activities is also included. This filmstrip series was copyrighted in 1980. A correlation chart linking the topics to the essential elements costs \$14.95.

★

TEXAS: THE LONE STAR STATE. Society for Visual Education, Inc. (SVE). Filmstrip/cassette program. Four segments, 17 minutes (avg.) each. \$119.00 per set; \$39.00 each. I, J.

A set of four filmstrips is available for either intermediate or junior high level. They are titled: *Geography and Climate*, *Early History to Independence*, *Statehood and After*, and *Change and Opportunity*.

THE TEXAS NATURE SERIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 15 minutes (avg.) each. \$179.95 set; VHS \$221.95. ML.

The set comprises twelve separate features, each available in filmstrip/cassette or VHS format. Sixteen pages of suggested projects and tests for each title are included with the set. The topics are the Texas Longhorn, mammals, forests, reptiles, insects, poisonous snakes, amphibians, birds, wildflowers, prairies, trees, and the Gulf Coast. Each program integrates its subject into the overall picture of the natural life of Texas. Average playing time for each program is fifteen minutes. Further descriptions of each are provided in the Video section of this guide.

TEXAS TRIBUTE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. 9 minutes. \$5.00. ML.

Popular Texas instrumental music on one side and choral singing on the other.

TOURING THE TEXAS CAPITOL. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Filmstrip/cassette program. 13 minutes. \$39.95. P, I, J.

This program is designed as a pre-trip view of the Texas Capitol. It details the Capitol's history and includes student activities.

TREASURE, PEOPLE, SHIPS, AND DREAMS: A SPANISH SHIPWRECK ON THE TEXAS COAST. Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette program. 25 minutes. \$50.00 entire program; slides \$20.00 each of three sets.

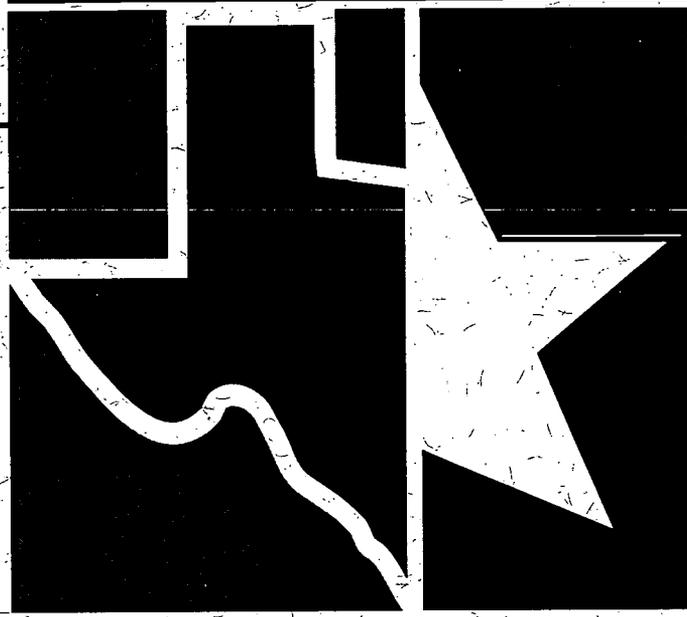
In 1554 three Spanish ships laden with gold, silver, and other treasures sank in a treacherous storm at sea. The story is told in three parts, each lasting between seven and nine minutes: *The Voyage*, *Shipwreck!*, and the excavation and restoration processes used to reclaim the artifacts that were recovered. The program includes a comprehensive guide.

WHAT IS A TEXAN? Institute of Texan Cultures. Filmstrip/cassette program. 8 minutes each. \$30.00; slides \$25.00. P, I, J.

Provides Texans and non-Texans with a fresh view of the people who comprise Texas, focusing on their ethnic diversity through both historic and contemporary photographs.



# NOTES



**Instructional Aids**



## *Atlases, Maps, and Other Geographic Teaching Aids*



ACREAGE MAP OF TEXAS. Texas General Land Office. Free. ML.

Upland acreage, submerged acreage to the three-marine-league line, riverbed acreage, excess acreage, and total acreage of the 254 Texas counties are shown. The size of the map is 10 by 9½ inches.

ATLAS OF MEXICO. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$20.00. J, S, A.

Published in 1975, the statistics are outdated but the maps are a valuable resource, especially for border studies in relation to the new NAFTA agreement.

ATLAS OF TEXAS. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. (Out of print.) J, S, A.

An economic atlas with nearly 300 full-color maps, graphs, and charts; two 19-by-23-inch maps included. Major sections cover physical setting; culture and history; population; transportation, education, and recreation; agriculture; mining and manufacturing. Authors: Stanley A. Arbingast et al.

CAPITAL OF TEXAS MAP. Texas General Land Office. \$5.40. ML.

First of a new series of reproduction maps. This one shows Sandusky's original 1939 town tract of Austin. The poster-size map measures 23½ by 18½ inches.

CITY MAPS OF TEXAS. Rand McNally and Co. Prices vary according to city. ML.

Rand McNally sells city maps of the following Texas cities: Austin, Corpus Christi, Dallas, Fort Worth, Houston, and San Antonio.

CONTOURS OF DISCOVERY. Texas State Historical Association. \$39.95. ML.

A set of twenty-two maps, eighteen of which are in full color, showing how various European and American cartographers perceived Texas and the Southwest from 1513 to 1930. There is also an illustrated guide.



COUNTY MAPS SHOWING ORIGINAL GRANTS AND SURVEYS. Texas General Land Office. \$15.00 per paper copy; \$40.00 per cloth copy. ML.

The official county maps compiled by and now in use in the General Land Office. The General Land Office is unable to mail maps until the required fees have been received.

ENERGY RESOURCES OF TEXAS MAP. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$5.00. ML.

A full-color map of the state showing the distribution of the wide variety of energy resources; measures 3½ by 4½ feet.

EXPLORING TEXAS. George F. Cram Co. \$339.00. I, J.

This hands-on desk map program provides lessons on Texas geography, history, economics, political systems, and cultures. The program includes two teacher's guides, student activity pages, thirty student desk maps, and thirty markers.

FOCUS ON TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. ML.

This transparency unit includes thirty transparency masters and eleven overlay transparency masters with twenty-six handout exercises. Designed to develop map, graph, and chart skills.

GENERAL LAND OFFICE MAP OF TEXAS. Texas General Land Office. Free. ML.

Shows state parks, state forests, county seats (with elevations), and pioneer roads and trails. The size of the map is 29 by 28 inches.

GEOGRAPHIC REGIONS MAP OF TEXAS. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$1.00. ML.

A color map showing the geographic regions of Texas. 19 by 23 inches.

GEOLOGIC MAP OF TEXAS. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$22.50. ML.

A color wall-map (82 by 102 inches) comprised of four sheets, each measuring 40 by 50 inches; scale 1:500,000.

GEOLOGY OF TEXAS. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. 25 cents. ML.

The geology of Texas shown on an 11½-by-8-inch map.

GIANT TEXAS STATE MAP. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$179.00. ML.

A large, colorful, hanging map on heavy, laminated paper. Shows all cities, towns, counties, highways, national forests, state parks, wildlife refuges, county seats, colleges, universities, historical sites, and intracoastal waterways. The map is suspended from spring rollers and rolls up for storage. The size of the map is 68 by 68 inches.

HANDS-ON GEOGRAPHY: GRADE 4 PROGRAM. Nystrom Division of Herff Jones, Inc. \$350.00. I.

A "hands-on" geography application that reviews and reinforces basic map skills, relates geography to history and economics, and facilitates an in-depth study of Texas. The package includes a program binder with teacher's guide and student lesson copymasters, thirty 22-by-17-inch, markable physical/political desk maps of Texas, and thirty Nyco marking pens. Maps have full text on one side, no text on reverse.

HANDS-ON GEOGRAPHY: GRADE 7 PROGRAM. Nystrom Division of Herff Jones, Inc. \$350.00. J.

The same "hands-on" geography program described above but designed for the seventh-grade Texas Studies Course.

HANDS-ON LEARNING TEXAS MAP. High Touch Learning, Inc. \$165.95. P, I, J.

A unique map that teachers and students construct together. The packet of materials includes a base map and a set of printed name tabs for cities, regions, etc. The teacher structures activities for students to place tabs on the map correctly.

HISTORICAL ATLAS OF TEXAS. University of Oklahoma Press. \$34.95; \$18.95 paper. J, S, A.

Over sixty-four maps trace the wide-ranging history of the state, each accompanied by a full-page description of the period, place, or event represented on the map. Subjects include geology, an informal blueprint of the Alamo, World War II military installations, cattle trails, and the Fredonian Republic. Authors: A. Ray Stephens and William M. Homes.

A HISTORICAL ATLAS OF TEXAS. Encino Press. \$25.00. J, S, A.

A series of nearly one hundred detailed maps and explanatory texts on specific aspects of Texas geography and history, including natural regions of the state, patterns of exploration, locations of battles, etc. Author: William C. Pool.

INDIANS OF THE SOUTHWEST AND MEXICO. George F. Cram Co. \$189.00. ML.

This 51-by-51-inch map depicting Indian culture in the Southwest contains the following features: an English/Spanish language text; original territories of the many tribes of Texas and the Southwest; and a listing of major reservations and archaeological sites. The map is mounted on a spring roller with backboard.

LAND RESOURCES OF TEXAS. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$7.50. J, S, A.

Four, color maps of Texas measure a total of 80 by 100 inches, and show such features as vegetation, landforms, and properties of land resources, as well as the state's geology.



MAP OF AUSTIN'S COLONY, 1821-1836. Texas General Land Office. \$16.20. ML.

The map is compiled from many archival sources and shows features never published before. Printed on acid-free paper, it measures 36 by 26 inches.

MAP SKILLS FOR TEXAS HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY STUDENTS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. I, J.

A workbook for Texas history and geography that contains seventeen reproducible exercises prepared for reviewing and reinforcing the following map skills: determining directions, using a map scale, identifying map symbols, locating places on a map, and studying a map and making inferences from information on it. These exercises also develop the student's knowledge of Texas place names.

MEXICAN AMERICAN. George F. Cram Co. \$189.00. ML.

This 51-by-51-inch map of the southwestern U.S. and Mexico contains explorer routes, Spanish missions, U.S. Indian reservations, and major battle sites. The map is mounted on a spring roller with backboard.

MINERAL RESOURCES OF TEXAS MAP. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$2.50. ML.

A full-color map of Texas measuring 3½ by 4½ feet and showing the distribution of energy resources.

NATIONAL HERITAGE MAP OF TEXAS. Texas General Land Office. 54-by-55-inch map \$5.00; 17-by-22-inch poster, \$1.08. ML.

The full-color map shows the major Texas vegetation regions, the rivers, the territories of wildlife and plants, and noteworthy ecological characteristics.

OFFICIAL TEXAS HIGHWAY TRAVEL MAP. Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

Designed especially for the highway traveler, this map shows the state highway system, cities, counties, county-seat elevations, river systems, public lakes, mountains, and national parks. Fourteen metropolitan areas are also detailed. Only teachers should request this item.

ORIGINAL LAND DISTRICTS IN TEXAS MAP. Texas General Land Office. Free. ML.

Original land districts in Texas are superimposed over the present-day counties of Texas. The size of the map is 11 by 8½ inches.

PATHWAYS TO THE DINOSAURS MAP. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.50. I, J, S.

Features numerous points of interest, areas of research, and activity suggestions relevant to the state's prehistoric past. The map measures 24 by 36 inches and is illustrated and printed on both sides.

PHYSICAL-POLITICAL TEXAS DESK-SIZE MAPS. Nystrom Division of Herff Jones, Inc. \$21.00 for single map; \$65.00 for set of five.

Laminated, markable desk-size maps of Texas.

PHYSICAL-POLITICAL WALL MAP OF TEXAS. Nystrom Division of Herff Jones, Inc. \$128.00.

65 by 54 inches; mounted on spring roller with backboard.

REVOLUTIONARY MAP OF TEXAS—1836; and COMMEMORATIVE MAP OF THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS—1845. Texas Conservation Fund. \$25.00 each. J, S, A.

The Revolutionary map measures 25½ by 31 inches, and the Commemorative map is 26 by 32 inches.

ROADS OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. ML.

Almost 150 large maps, drawn at a scale of 3.42 miles per inch, shows everything from the farm and ranch roads to the interstate highways. The atlas includes information on people and places, weather, and state parks.

THE SIZE, DISTRIBUTION, AND GROWTH OF THE TEXAS POPULATION, 1980 TO 2030. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$10.00. S, A.

Analysis of population distribution in 1970 and 1980, with maps and reports projecting future changes. Author: Robert K. Holz.

STATE MAPS ON FILE: SOUTHWEST. Facts on File, Inc. \$85.00. ML.

The Southwest volume of the seven-volume series includes maps on various topics related to Texas. They have been updated since the 1990 census. The collection can be photocopied or projected as transparencies. Bound with buckram, the maps come in three-ring binders and are printed on durable paper stock.

TECTONIC MAP OF TEXAS. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$15.00 for large size. 25 cents for one-page (8½ by 11 inches) size. ML.

View of tectonic features in Texas. Map measures 67 by 74 inches. Also available in page-size format.

TEXAS. George F. Cram Co. \$109.00.

Large-scale wall map mounted on spring roller with backboard; measures 68 by 68 inches.

TEXAS. Rand McNally and Co. \$115.00.

A 50-by-58-inch political/physical map of Texas.



TEXAS DEMOGRAPHIC TRENDS. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$18.00. A.

Graphic reproduction of basic and unique features drawn from the 1970, 1980, and 1990 United States censuses.

TEXAS HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS AND MAPS SET. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. J, S.

The packet of seven facsimile documents reproduced on simulated parchment includes Houston's report of the Battle of San Jacinto; the Declaration of Independence; the Joint Resolution for Annexing Texas to the U.S.; Organic Law; Meusebach's Treaty; the Ordinance of Secession; and Travis's Letter from the Alamo. Three maps, including a large wall-map showing the Texas counties and rivers, accompany the documents.

TEXAS HISTORY/GEOGRAPHY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. J.

An ancillary package, the materials were produced for a previously adopted seventh-grade textbook. There are many reproducible black-line masters covering worksheets, activities, puzzles, and test materials. The teacher's guide is full of ideas and teaching suggestions.

TEXAS: MAP AND GAMES PACKET. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$8.95. I, J.

The packet is comprised of two 35-by-44-inch, black-and-white state maps on plastic cloth, with numerous features and surrounding data. Two knowledge-testing games, designed for one to four players or for groups, accompany each map. The packet also includes markers and complete instructions.

TEXAS MAPS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95 for set of 4. ML.

These 17-by-11-inch maps locate historical events, major industries, natural regions, geographic sections, counties, and highways.

TEXAS MAP WITH COUNTIES. Texas General Land Office. Free. ML.

A page-size map showing the 254 counties of Texas.

TEXAS RAISED-RELIEF MAP. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$19.95. ML.

A full-color map of Texas that indicates vegetation, rivers, lakes, populated areas, and other points of interest. Printed on vinyl material, it is vacuum-formed to raise the mountainous regions and lower the canyon lands and valleys. The map measures 21 by 22 inches.

TEXAS/U.S./WORLD MAP COMBINATIONS. Nystrom Division of Herff Jones, Inc. \$180.00 for 2 maps; \$270.00 for 3 maps. ML.

Combination maps consisting of two or three map-sheets mounted on a spring roller.

Combinations feature the Texas Visual Relief Wall Map, mounted together with a U.S. map; and a Robinson Projection World Map.

TOPOGRAPHICAL AND GEOLOGICAL MAPS OF TEXAS. U.S. Geological Survey. Catalog, index, and price list available on request. ML.

Topographical and geological maps of Texas are available from the U.S. Geological Survey's regional office in Denver. An index of maps and a price list is available on request.

TRAVELING THROUGH TEXAS: A WORKBOOK FOR USING THE TEXAS HIGHWAY MAP. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J, S.

A workbook designed to help students learn to use an index, determine distance, learn latitude and longitude, examine elevation, use a legend, and develop other geographical map skills. Authors: Doris Mircovich and Richard Sorenson.

YOUNG TEXANS AND THEIR LAND: AN INTRODUCTION TO TEXAS RIVERS, BAYS, CITIES, AND BORDERING STATES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

A workbook written by two Texas history teachers, it is designed to provide the seventh-grade Texas history student with descriptions of the physical, cultural, and economic features of the Texas landscape. The workbook contains a number of worksheets that may be reproduced for classroom use. Authors: Doris Mircovich and Richard Sorenson.



# NOTES



## *Booklets, Pamphlets, and Brochures*



THE ABCs OF TEXAS WILDFLOWERS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P, I.

This coloring-book introduction to wildflowers includes twenty-six flowers common to Texas, with a full-page illustration of each and a facing-page narrative of characteristics and locale, a glossary of botanical terms, and brief descriptions of the sixteen flower families represented. Author: Glenda G. Grimmer.

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE PUBLICATIONS. American Petroleum Institute. Free. J, S, A.

The American Petroleum Institute has a number of colorful, attractive booklets about the petroleum and other energy industries that indirectly relate to Texas. A list of publications is available on request.

COMANCHE MOON: THE TRUE STORY OF CYNTHIA ANN PARKER, HER SON QUANAH, AND THE WILD COMANCHES OF TEXAS. Texas State Historical Association. \$5.95. J, S.

A cartoon-picture narrative about Cynthia Ann Parker's twenty-five-year captivity among the Comanche Indians, and her son Quanah Parker, the last chief of the Comanches. Author: Jack Jackson.

COWBOYS: AN ACTIVITY BOOK. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.00. I, J.

An activity book/workbook of learning activities and reproducible worksheets. Units include: The Outlaws, The Lawmen, The Chuck Wagon, Brands, The Cowboy's Costume, The Great Trails, and Big Ranches. Author: John Artman.

THE DALLAS HISTORICAL SOCIETY. ML.

The Society operates a museum and research center in the Hall of State at Fair Park, and also offers publications, major exhibitions, and educational programs relating to the history of Dallas and its environs. Details on request.



**DISCOVER DALLAS: A CHILD'S GUIDE.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. P, I.

A reproducible workbook designed to be the basis for a classroom unit on community history. Includes a number of line drawings of Dallas symbols and scenery suitable for coloring. Also includes suggestions for creating a similar set of teaching aids for other cities. This book has recently been updated. Author: Elaine Velvin.

**THE ECOSYSTEM OF OIL.** American Petroleum Institute. Free. J, S, A.

A creatively illustrated, twenty-page booklet outlines the role played by petroleum throughout history, and its vital contribution to the world of today. The industry's commitment to safeguarding the environment and wildlife resources is emphasized.

**EMBLEMS OF TEXAS: MORE THAN A COLORING BOOK.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. P, I, J.

A workbook/coloring book written by two Texas history teachers and designed to introduce elementary students to the symbols of Texas. The booklet contains a number of worksheets that may be reproduced for classroom use. Authors: Doris Mircovich and Richard Sorenson.

**FLAGS IN THE HISTORY OF TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. I, J, S.

A forty-page booklet with reproducible illustrations shows the forty flags and banners that correspond with the state's history from early exploration through statehood. Each is informatively described. Authors: John Potter and Steve Veazey.

**FLOWERS OF TEXAS.** Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

This brochure contains photographs of fifty-six Texas wildflowers. Popular and botanical names are listed, and a brief description is given of each flower and where it grows. Regional descriptions, as well as a general narrative on Texas flowers, are included. Only teachers should request this item.

**GUIDES TO AEROSPACE INFORMATION.** NASA, Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center. Free. A.

The National Aeronautical and Space Administration has several items of interest to teachers, including a film catalog, an aerospace bibliography, and a publications booklet.

**GUIDE TO OBTAINING USGS INFORMATION.** Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey. Free. ML.

Provides information on USGS products and services and how to obtain them.

**GUIDE TO RESOURCES: ARCHIVES AND RECORDS DIVISION.** Texas General Land Office. Free. A.

Outlines the available resources in this division.

GUIDE TO RESOURCES: TEXAS GENERAL LAND OFFICE. Texas General Land Office. Free. A.

Archives and Records Division booklet describing collections in the Land Office and outlining the grants system.

HISTORICAL PRESERVATION AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL BULLETINS AND BOOKLETS. Texas Historical Commission. Inexpensive or free. A.

A current list of publications on preserving historical buildings and on archaeological sites in Texas is available.

THE INDIANS OF TEXAS AND THE PLANTS THEY USED. Texas Historical Commission. Free. P, I, J.

An illustrated, twelve-page introduction to the major groups of historic Indians and the wild plants they used for food, tools, and construction.

THE INDIAN YEARS. Texas Historical Commission. \$2.00. P, I.

An introduction to the prehistory of Texas and how archaeologists work.

LAS MUJERES: MEXICAN AMERICAN/CHICANA WOMEN. National Women's History Project. \$8.50. J, S, A.

Full-page photographs and half-page biographies in English and Spanish recount the story of seventeen women from the eighteenth century to the present.

LAW IN THE LONE STAR STATE. State Bar of Texas. \$15.00. J.

This grade seven curriculum packet, distributed by the State Bar of Texas, is a "book about the people in Texas and their constant struggle to find the most successful way to govern themselves." Chapter titles include the following: "Law Comes to Texas"; "Wagons to Texas"; "Law in Early Texas"; "Law and Government Today"; and "Youth and the Law." The work also includes a glossary of legal terms and an appendix. The information was revised in 1991.

LIVING WITH THE TEXAS PAST SERIES. Texas Historical Commission. *The Indian Years*. (Out of print.); *The Years of Exploration*. \$3.00. ML.

Two booklets describe the different groups of people who have occupied the state's cultural regions, and examine the evidence remaining today of their daily lives. *The Indian Years* covers the prehistorical years, and *The Years of Exploration* describes European exploration and Indian lifeways during the period from about 1500 to 1700.

MEXICAN AMERICAN/CHICANA WOMEN. National Women's History Project. Bilingual photo-display. \$14.95. ML.

Twenty black-and-white photographs of notable women in their everyday lives. Each



measures 8½ by 11 inches, and is accompanied by a biographical account in both English and Spanish.

NATIONAL WILDFLOWER RESEARCH CENTER. Free. ML.

The Center has several botanical and general-interest pamphlets useful for the classroom.

PUBLICATIONS FROM THE GOVERNOR'S OFFICE. Office of the Governor. Free. ML.

The Governor's Office has a number of items of interest to teachers, especially at the elementary level. These two- and three-page reports are on topics such as "The State Seal of Texas," "The Story of the Alamo," "Six Flags Over Texas," "Texas Capitals," "Duties and Powers of the Governor of Texas," and "Things to See in the Capitol."

PUBLICATIONS FROM THE OFFICE OF THE STATE ARCHAEOLOGIST. Texas Historical Commission. Free. ML.

Several booklets are available. They are well written and organized, and some have practical and enjoyable classroom exercises.

REPUBLIC OF TEXAS DOCUMENT SET. Star of the Republic Museum. \$3.50. I, J.

A set of seven documents, including the Texas Declaration of Independence.

TEACHERS' GUIDE TO THE *HANDBOOK OF TEXAS*. Texas State Historical Association. \$3.00 (1 to 5 copies); \$2.25 (6 or more copies). ML.

A guide to help teachers find new and interesting ways to use the *Handbook of Texas*. The guide is divided into four parts. Part I traces the origins of the history of the *Handbook* (1952) and the *Supplement* which followed (1976). Part II looks at nineteen subject areas or themes discussed in the *Handbook* and provides a number of classroom activities. Part III suggests ways the *Handbook* can be used to develop writing, thinking, and research skills. Part IV concludes with several "*Handbook Games*" for the classroom.

TEACHER'S GUIDE TO THE INSTITUTE OF TEXAN CULTURES. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$2.95. (Limited number available.) I, J, A.

This booklet includes study-unit outlines, classroom activities, and discussion starters to help teachers incorporate in the existing curriculum the study of family heritage, ethnic cultures, and pioneer life. This book is especially helpful to teachers planning a field trip to the Institute as it includes many pre- and post-visit activities.

TEXAS. Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

Liberally illustrated, 248-page guide with information on many aspects of the state of Texas that may be enjoyed by travelers and those viewing from the classroom.



TEXAS AND ITS FLAGS. The Daughters of the Republic of Texas. \$2.00. ML.

An eighteen-page booklet on the current Texas flag, the battle flags of Texas, and the six flags Texas has been under. Published by the Daughters of the Republic of Texas in 1981.

TEXAS ARCHEOLOGY AWARENESS MONTH TEACHERS BOOKLET AND PACKETS: ELEMENTARY. Texas Historical Commission. \$5.00 per packet. P, I.

Each Texas Archeology Awareness Month packet for the elementary grades contains the following materials in the quantities indicated: 1 Teacher's Resource Booklet; 2 posters, full-color; 30 bookmarks; 30 *Indian Years Coloring Book*; 30 "Archeology at a Glance"; 1 *The Indians of Texas and the Plants They Used*; 1 "Keeping Track of Time: A Guide to Viewing Our Native American Heritage"; 1 *Archeology in the Classroom*; and 1 *You Are the Guardian of the Past*. Texas Archeology Awareness Month is celebrated every April.

TEXAS ARCHEOLOGY AWARENESS MONTH TEACHERS BOOKLET AND PACKETS: MIDDLE SCHOOL. Texas Historical Commission. \$5.00 per packet. J.

Each Texas Archeology Awareness Month packet for the middle school grades contains the following materials in the quantities indicated: 1 Teacher's Resource Booklet; 2 posters, full-color; 30 bookmarks; 30 *You Are the Guardian of the Past*; 30 "Archeology at a Glance"; 1 "Keeping Track of Time: A Guide to Viewing Our Native American Heritage"; 1 *The Indians of Texas and the Plants They Used*; 1 *Archeology in the Classroom*; and 1 "How Can I Become a Professional Archeologist." Texas Archeology Awareness Month is celebrated every April.

TEXAS AT A GLANCE. Texas Historical Commission. Free. ML.

A four-page "fact sheet" published by the research department at the Texas Historical Commission. The booklet includes a list of ten of our state's symbols, a list of twenty-five major dates in Texas history, and answers to thirty-two "Did You Know?" questions about the Lone Star State.

TEXAS CAPITOL GUIDE. Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

A well-illustrated, color brochure on the state Capitol and the Capitol-complex area. The guide includes points of interest, a section on Capitol facts, and a brief history of Texas capitals and the present Capitol area. Only teachers should request this item.

TEXAS FACTS. Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

A brochure that contains many pertinent facts about Texas: area, boundaries, geography, climate, population, industries, occupations, and natural resources. Only teachers should request this item.

TEXAS GEOLOGICAL GUIDEBOOKS. Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. Most are under \$8.00; price list available on request. J, S, A.

The Bureau of Economic Geology has a number of guidebooks on Texas geology written



in layman's language. A few of the titles have included: *Texas Fossils: An Amateur Collector's Handbook*, *Texas Rocks and Minerals: An Amateur's Guide*, *The Big Bend of the Rio Grande*, *A Guide to the Rocks, Landscape, Geologic History and Settlers of the Area of Big Bend National Park*, and *Geologic and Historic Guide to the State Parks of Texas*.

TEXAS HISTORY MOVIES. Texas State Historical Association. \$4.50. I, J, S.

This booklet is a compilation of comic strips introduced in the *Dallas News* almost sixty years ago, celebrating famous events in Texas history. Recent revision has corrected errors and eliminated ethnic and racial slurs.

TEXAS, OUR TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$2.50. A.

Sheet music, vocal and piano, in the key of C, for the song "Texas, Our Texas."

TEXAS STATE LIBRARY. Free. J, S, A.

Genealogical resources at the Texas State Library are identified. Information and archival services are also described.

A TEXAS TRIBUTE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.00. ML.

The nine-minute cassette tape features popular instrumental music of Texas on one side, and chorus singing on the other. Suitable for plays, pageants, or as classroom background music.

THE TEXIANS AND THE TEXANS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$4.95 each. J, S, A.

This series of books and pamphlets covers many of the ethnic groups in Texas. Each pamphlet begins with the story of how and why an individual ethnic group came to Texas. Descriptions of major settlements and significant contributions of each culture are included along with biographies of dominant figures, providing an overview for the general reader. Each booklet is between twenty-six and thirty-two pages long. Some titles are out of print, but available in libraries. The series includes: *The Afro-American Texans*, *The Anglo-American Texans*, *The Belgian Texans*, *The Chinese Texans*, *The Czech Texans*, *The French Texans*, *The Greek Texans*, *The Indian Texans*, *The Italian Texans*, *The Jewish Texans*, *The Mexican Texans*, *Los Tejanos Mexicanos*, *The Norwegian Texans*, *The Spanish Texans*, and *The Swiss Texans*.

TRAVIS' LETTER FROM THE ALAMO. Star of the Republic Museum. \$1.00. I, J.

A parchment facsimile of the letter dispatched by William Travis from the Alamo.

TRUE TALES OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. P, I, J.

This facsimile reproduction is for reading aloud in the classroom. In addition to biographies of such figures as Cabeza de Vaca and La Salle, there are thumbnail descriptions of early churches and schools, notes on Texas symbols, the origins of place names, and plentiful exercises and activities. Author: Bertha Mae Cox.

USING HISTORICAL MARKERS IN THE CLASSROOMS. Texas Historical Commission. Free. A.

Numerous activities focus on historical markers, their sites and significance.

WOMEN IN TEXAS HISTORY: THEY MADE A DIFFERENCE. Texas Historical Commission. \$2.00. J, S, A.

An informative booklet written by THC staff member Cynthia J. Beeman.

THE YEARS OF EXPLORATION. Texas Historical Commission. \$3.00. P, I.

Drawings by Sharon Roos. An easy-to-understand introduction to the years of European exploration of Texas (1500–1700) and the lifeways of major historic Indian groups.



# NOTES



## *Posters, Bulletin Boards, and Other Classroom Display Materials*



ABC'S OF TEXAS, SIX FLAGS OF TEXAS, TEXAS STATE SYMBOLS. Dinah-Might Activities. \$6.00 per set. P, I.

Three of the creations produced and packaged by Dinah-Might add a dimension of fun to the learning process. Materials are factually accurate, and attractive to young students.

EARLY TEXAS INDIAN MURAL POSTERS. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$10.00 each; \$25.00 set of three. ML.

Posters representing three settlement areas: the Caddos, East Texas farmers; the Mogollon people, desert farmers in southwest Texas; and the Lipan Apaches, shown in a Hill Country camp in the eighteenth century. Each poster measures 36 by 21 inches.

HISPANIC BULLETIN BOARDS AND ACTIVITIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. P, I.

Instructional bulletin boards teach Spanish. Topics include: Greetings, Numbers, Colors, Days, Months, Families, Holidays, Food, famous Mexicans and Spaniards.

ILLUSTRATED TEXAS HISTORY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$69.95. P, I.

A full-color, 22-poster set (17½ by 22½ inches). Topics include: "The Archives War," "Mr. Pilgrim's School at San Felipe," and "San Jacinto." A resource guide is included.

REPUBLIC OF TEXAS CURRENCY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$1.95. ML.

This handful of "banknotes" dating back to the years 1838-1841 includes bills of six monetary denominations ranging from \$3.00 to \$100.00.

REPUBLIC OF TEXAS DOCUMENTS SET. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. J, S.

Seven documents, including letters and proclamations pertinent to the days of the Texas Republic, are reproduced on parchment paper.

SAM HOUSTON LIFE LINE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I, J.

The life of Sam Houston is presented in cartoon style on four panels, each measuring



8½ by 21 inches and suitable for bulletin-board viewing. Chronological dates and a fact list are supplied along with teaching suggestions. Author: Rex Hudson.

THE SIX FLAGS OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.50 each. ML.

Each of the six rayon flags are mounted on black staffs with gilt spears, and come with an ebonized wooden base. Each flag is 4 by 6 inches.

TEXAS ARCHEOLOGY AWARENESS MONTH POSTERS. Texas Historical Commission. \$5.00 per packet. P, I, J.

For these posters, see Texas Archeology Awareness Month Teachers Booklet and Packets: Elementary and Middle School under Instructional Aids (Booklets).

TEXAS BOOKMARKS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$2.50. ML.

Each packet of thirty-six bookmarks carries nine designs showing aspects of the history and geography of Texas.

TEXAS HEROES POSTERS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.50. P, I.

Set of six posters each 11 by 17 inches, printed in color. Heroes are Austin, Bonham, Bowie, Houston, Crockett, and Travis. Short biographies are included.

TEXAS INDIANS MURAL. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. ML.

Eight panels, representing eight tribes, may be colored and used on a bulletin board or as supplemental material. There is an information guide describing each of the panels, and a map showing Texas tribe locations. Measures 11 by 136 inches.

TEXAS MAP POSTER. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. ML.

History and human-interest topics crowd this colorful, captioned map which seems to provide more detail with every perusal.

TEXAS SEALS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$2.95 per set. P, I.

Three sets of self-adhesive, pressure-sensitive labels. Each set contains four sheets of six different Texas symbols linked with the bluebonnet, the prickly pear, and the state flag.

TEXAS SYMBOLS POSTERS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.50. P, I.

Set of seven, full-color, 11-by-17-inch posters with background information pamphlet. Set includes Texas under six flags; the state capitol; the Alamo; the bluebonnet; the mockingbird; the pecan tree; and the San Jacinto Monument.

TEXAS UNDER SIX FLAGS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.50. ML.

Brightly colored scenes from each flag period. Each print measures 17 by 11 inches.



## *Educational Games and Computer Software*



**BIG AS TEXAS: THE A TO Z TOUR OF TEXAS CITIES AND PLACES.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. P, I.

Full-page drawings illustrate this challenging gamebook about Texas locations. Authors: Linda Lewis Michael and Patrick Lewis.

**BUILD THE ALAMO.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. ML.

A cut-and-assemble construction book to put together at school or at home. The heavy-card-stock kit has step-by-step instructions for the numbered pieces. A history of the shrine is included. Author: Mark Wheatly.

**THE CHISHOLM TRAIL.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$19.95. ML.

Two to four players, or classroom groups, attempt to drive their Longhorn cattle along the trail to Dodge City in this challenging board game.

**COWGIRLS: A COLORING BOOK.** National Women's History Project. \$3.95. I, J.

Full-page pictures and smaller portraits of some remarkable women from the Old West, accompanied by biographies and general articles.

**EMBLEMS OF TEXAS.** SMP Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. P, I.

The best-known emblems of Texas are linked with people and places in the state's history. The illustrations can be colored. Authors: Richard Sorenson and Doris Mircovich.

**I KNOW: TEXAS HISTORY GAMES.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J, S.

The bingo format, with game boards and question cards, follows the pattern of trivia games. May be played by up to twenty-eight players. A teacher's guide is included.

**INDIANS OF TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$3.50. P, I.

A coloring book that highlights the customs, weapons, and other lifestyle features of the major Native-American tribes in Texas with territories keyed to a map.



THE INDIAN YEARS COLORING BOOK. Texas Historical Commission. \$1.00. P, I, J.

An eight-page coloring book for children (to about nine years of age) with a one-page text that briefly and simply explains prehistoric inhabitants of Texas.

LET'S REMEMBER SERIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95 per volume. P, I.

A series of five descriptive, basic Texas history books for the elementary and special-education student. Each book features reproducible pages, activities, and detailed pen-and-ink drawings suitable for coloring. Titles in the series are: *Indians of Texas*, *When Texas Belonged to Spain*, *When Texas Belonged to Mexico*, *When Texas Was a Republic*, and *Texas: The 28th State*.

LONE STAR TIME MACHINE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. I, J.

This game and activity workbook has eight activities planned to take one to two hours each, and designed to inform and amuse students with details of everyday challenges of the past. Author: Sharline Lavender.

A MULTIMEDIA HISTORY OF EARLY TEXAS: FEATURING THE BATTLE OF THE ALAMO AND THE TEXAN REVOLUTION. Archimedia Interactive. \$109.95; \$149.95 with Teacher's Guide. ML.

A CD-ROM that covers the history of Texas, Native Americans, the battle of the Alamo, other battles in the Texas Revolution, biographical information on famous Texans, Tejanos, and Mexicans, Texas missions, Alamo legends, uniforms, period weapons, and more. Different points of view are used (Texan, Mexican, and Tejano) so that students can draw their own conclusions.

RAINY DAYS IN TEXAS FUNBOOK. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. P, I.

Contains a large variety of projects and activities including word-search puzzles, do-it-yourself jigsaw puzzles and mobiles, some emergency coloring book pages, a Texas flag construction kit, connect-the-dot pictures and much more. 120 pages.

THE STORY OF TEXAS: A HISTORY PICTURE BOOK. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$3.95. P, I.

Forty-eight, regular-size pages of black-and-white drawings suitable for coloring.

TEXAS ACTIVITY BOOKS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. Prices range from \$3.50 to \$5.50. P, I.

These five books provide general information on their subjects, and large illustrations for coloring. The subjects include Texas birds, Indians, wildlife, the cowboy, and Texas history.

TEXAS BINGO. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$24.95. ML.

The teacher's edition of this popular board game provides instructions and game pieces. It may be played by up to eighteen players.

TEXAS COLORING BOOKS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$4.95 each. P, I.

These ten coloring books for elementary students provide companion activities for the Texas Video Library. Each has thirty reproducible 8½-by-11-inch pages of line drawings. The subjects include a Texas history, a transportation time line, wildflowers, symbols, missions, festivals, businesses, the Independence Trail, and the Capitol.

TEXAS HISTORY. France and Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$24.95. I, J, S.

Two progressively difficult segments introduce an academic computer game dedicated to Texas history and geography. Correct answers to both sets of seventy-two multiple-choice questions are provided before the next question appears on the screen. One to four players can keep score of their progress. Available for high density IBM and compatible computers on either one 3.5-inch diskette or two 5.25-inch diskettes.

TEXAS HISTORY CLASSROOM PLAYS. Knowing Press. Priced according to requirements of full set or multiple copies. I, J.

Six, short classroom plays allow history to come alive for students. A cassette is available, along with separate biographies of each play's central character, such as "Deaf Smith" and Dilue Rose. Author: Jan Seale. These are further described in the Juvenile Fiction listings.

TEXAS PLAYING CARDS. Star of the Republic Museum. \$4.50. ML.

Each card features a point of Texas history on the back.

TEXAS RATTLESNAKE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$8.95. P, I.

The card game, played along the lines of Old Maid, introduces children to Texas nature and wildlife.

TEXAS REVOLUTION: THE GLORIOUS WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE AND GREAT RUNAWAY SCRAPE, 1836. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.50. J, S, A.

Includes a five-color, battlefield map of colonial Texas that shows prairies, hills, woods, marshes, rivers, and towns from the Rio Grande to Louisiana. The playing pieces represent Texas militia, Mexican conscripts, American volunteers, U.S. Army regulars, Native Americans, and such historic figures as Santa Anna, Davy Crockett, and Sam Houston. There are also four mini-games. Instructions are in both English and Spanish. Designed for two or more players.



TEXAS TRAVELER. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$23.95. ML.

A geographical board game designed on the map of Texas, where players race around to reach their destinations.

TEXAS WILDLIFE COLORING BOOK. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$2.95. P, I.

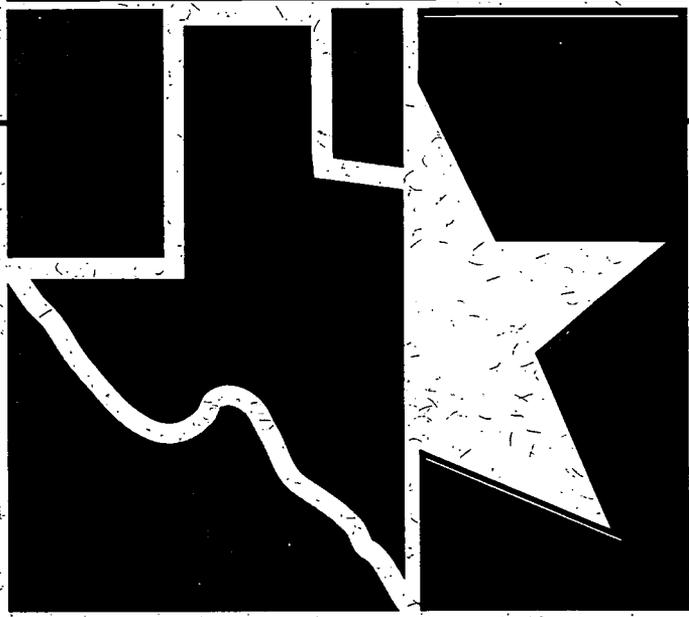
Thirty-three examples of Texas animals and birds are drawn by John Carter, former official Texas state artist.

TRAVELING THROUGH TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Primarily intended for seventh graders, this workbook helps students learn how to use maps, in this instance the Texas highway map, which is included. Authors: Doris Mircovich and Richard Sorenson.

WOMEN OF TEXAS SERIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95 each. ML.

Paper dolls and biography rolled into one. The two books tell the life stories of Clara Driscoll, savior of the Alamo; and Miriam Ferguson, the first woman governor of Texas. The paper-doll wardrobes reflect the styles of the time, especially those demanded by the women's public roles.



**The Internet**



## *The Internet*



The Texas Studies Gopher, Armadillo, was designed in 1993 with the middle school teacher and student in mind. Providing information about Texas natural and cultural history, it supports an interdisciplinary course of study for students interested in their surroundings.

Armadillo was created in support of Texas history teachers by teachers and students in the Houston School district who envisioned the adaptation of internet resources and multimedia materials—laserdiscs, CD-ROM discs, hypercard stacks, etc.—for instructional use. A Textbook Waiver from the State of Texas was granted, allowing the bulk of the Middle School Texas History textbook allocation to be used for the implementation of this program. To support an interdisciplinary approach, Armadillo was designed with materials and activities from all middle school subject areas.

Although the technology that made Armadillo possible is young, its possibilities are awesome. Armadillo was not conceived to be a static vessel, but to change as teachers and students work with it and add to it, and as the technology becomes more capable of transmitting and storing images, movies, and sound. The collaboration of students and teachers from around the state will make Armadillo truly successful.

By early 1994, Armadillo had been moved to a World Wide Web server, the second such server developed in the K-12 educational world. The goals of the Armadillo server program are to:

- > Develop a rich depository of information based upon the natural science and cultural history of a region, and make this information easily accessible through an interdisciplinary curriculum that will support students and teachers in the development of in-depth projects related to reading and writing, mathematics, science, and social studies.
- > Publish primary source materials developed by the Texas State Historical Association, the Houston Museum of Natural History, NASA, and Rice University. These materials contain tens of thousands of references to natural science and cultural history.
- > Develop projects, interactive World Wide Web materials, and other instructional materials that are correlated to the Essential Elements and the objectives of the Texas Assessment of Academic Skills (TAAS) evaluation instruments.



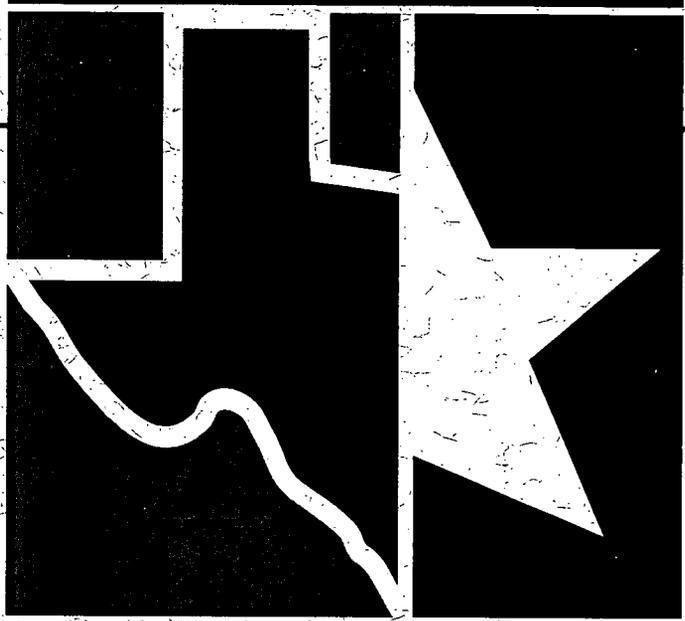
The resources contained in Armadillo can be used in many ways:

- ▶ A reference source for the teacher in preparing lessons.
- ▶ A reference source for the student in conducting research.
- ▶ A source of hand-out materials.
- ▶ A source of classroom projects.
- ▶ A source of collaborative projects across the state and nation.
- ▶ A source of world-wide teacher interaction through internet discussion groups.
- ▶ A window on the future.

Additionally, the collaborations that are a key to networking projects are well under way. Armadillo is providing a space for teachers statewide to publish materials related to their local environments. Materials and projects have been created by teachers and students at The Rice School, Lanier Middle School, Stevenson Middle School, and Reagan High School to name but a few of the HISD participants. Teachers from Fort Bend ISD, Brownsville ISD, San Antonio ISD, and other districts from across the state have also created online materials.

Armadillo may be accessed using any World Wide Web Client or Browser, such as NCSA Mosaic or Netscape or the Browsers provided by America Online or CompuServe. The Texas Education Network (TENET) provides a text-only browser called Lynx that allows access to the textual portions of these resources. To connect to Armadillo, point your browser to the uniform resource locator (url) <http://www.rice.edu/armadillo/>.

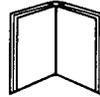
# TEACHING TEXAS HISTORY



## Publications



*Resource and Reference Books on General Topics Pertaining to  
Texas and the Teaching of Texas History and Geography*



AESCULAPIUS ON THE COLORADO. Encino Press. \$20.00. S, A.

Focusing on medical practice in Travis County, author Dr. James M. Coleman gives an idea of the state of medicine throughout Texas to the end of the nineteenth century.

THE ALAMO. Holiday. \$12.95. I, J.

A carefully researched history of the physical structure, its historic importance in the growth of Texas, and its significance as a contemporary shrine. The book is heavily illustrated with portraits of the Texas heroes, maps, old photographs, and the author's scratchboard drawings, all in black and white. Author: Leonard E. Fisher.

ANCIENT TEXANS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$27.95. I, J, S, A.

Rock art and lifeways along the Lower Pecos River are explored in essays written by specialists. Dozens of photographs and full-color illustrations show the best-preserved examples of the art. Author: Harry J. Shafer; photographer: Jim Zintgraff.

AN AUSTIN ALBUM. Encino Press. \$25.00. I, J, S, A.

Life in Austin from the early days of the Republic is depicted in memorabilia and 175 photographs. Author: Audray Bateman.

ART AMONG US/ARTE ENTRE NOSTROS: MEXICAN AMERICAN FOLK ART IN TEXAS. Texas Folklife Resources. \$15.00. I, J, S, A.

A descriptive, illustrated catalog in English and Spanish describes the full spectrum of folk art among Mexican Americans in San Antonio.

AT LEAST 1836 THINGS YOU OUGHT TO KNOW ABOUT TEXAS BUT PROBABLY DON'T. Republic of Texas Press. \$9.95. ML.

Scores of regional facts about Texas will enable teachers to enliven their classes and whet students' appetites for more information on the history of the state. Author: Doris L. Miller.



**BASIC TEXAS BOOKS: AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF SELECTED WORKS FOR A RESEARCH LIBRARY.** Texas State Historical Association. \$29.95. A.

The revised bibliography on four centuries of publishing in Texas includes an annotated guide to 217 Texas bibliographies. Author: John H. Jenkins.

**THE BATTLE OF THE ALAMO.** Texas State Historical Association. \$4.50. J, S.

A straightforward text retelling one of the pivotal dramas in Texas history. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: Ben Procter.

**THE BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO.** Texas State Historical Association. \$4.50. S, A.

The story of San Jacinto told against a background of political, cultural, and military conflicts between the rebellious Texans and the Mexican government and army. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: James W. Pohl.

**BETWEEN THE CREEKS: RECOLLECTIONS OF NORTHEAST TEXAS.** Encino Press. \$12.50. I, J, S, A.

Photographs of the area and its people support vignettes from the inhabitants of the region. Authors: Deborah Brown and Katharine Gust.

**A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF TEXAS GOVERNMENT AND POLITICS.** Policy Research Institute of the University of Texas at Austin. \$10.00. A.

Although primarily for college students, this bibliography will be useful to high school teachers and librarians. The first part is a guide for doing research in Texas politics. The second part is an extensive bibliography on politics and public policy.

**THE BIG BEND OF THE RIO GRANDE: A GUIDE TO THE ROCKS, LANDSCAPE, GEOLOGIC HISTORY, AND SETTLERS OF THE AREA OF BIG BEND NATIONAL PARK.** Bureau of Economic Geology, University of Texas. \$5.00. J, S, A.

This guidebook identifies the geology and natural history, the place names and legends, and the natural uses of plant life in the area. Illustrated with figures and maps.

**BIRDER'S GUIDE TO TEXAS.** Gulf Publishing Co. \$13.95. ML.

This second edition of a near-classic paperback guide includes maps, appendices, and an index covering the geographical spectrum of bird-watching in Texas. Author: Ed Kutac.

**BLACK TEXAS WOMEN: 150 YEARS OF TRIAL AND TRIUMPH.** University of Texas Press. \$60.00; \$24.95 paper. J, S, A.

This important study, the product of extensive archival and oral research, traces the contribution and involvement of African American women in Texas history from the colonial period until the present. Women who served in political and professional arenas are

featured. More than two hundred photographs expand the book's appeal.

**BLUE NORTHERS TO SEA BREEZES: TEXAS WEATHER AND CLIMATE.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; workbook \$8.95. J, S, A.

The first part of the book covers topics such as the origin, composition, and temperature structure of our atmosphere. The latter part of the book applies this knowledge to Texas weather and climate. A student workbook is also available. Author: Donald R. Haragan.

**CACTI OF TEXAS AND NEIGHBORING STATES: A FIELD GUIDE.** University of Texas Press. \$22.95. J, S, A.

Close to two hundred forms of cacti found in Texas and the Southwest are pictured and described in this work. Descriptions include special features, range of occurrence, and scientific and common names. Author: Del Weniger.

**CAPITOLS OF TEXAS: A VISUAL HISTORY.** Encino Press. \$20.00. S, A.

The seven historic capital cities of Texas are described in close detail, and illustrated with more than a hundred photographs, etchings, drawings, and paintings. Author: Sara Clark.

**THE CHIEF EXECUTIVES OF TEXAS: FROM STEPHEN F. AUSTIN TO JOHN B. CONNALLY, JR.** Texas A&M University Press. \$29.50. S, A.

In this survey of the Lone Star State's bygone leaders, historian Kenneth E. Hendrickson candidly discusses their lives and careers—warts, peccadilloes, and all—from a realistic, historical perspective. Each governor's biography describes the leader's personality, personal life, and political career, and includes an assessment of accomplishments and faults.

**A CHILD'S HISTORY OF TEXAS.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$5.95. P, I, J.

The colorful history of Texas, with illustrations on every page, rounds out the curriculum. It may be read aloud to lower grades, or by students in the seventh grade. Authors: Sarah Jackson and Ann Paterson.

**CHRONOLOGY OF TEXAS HISTORY THROUGH 1920.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95. ML.

The chronology of events is listed by year, month, and date so that in preparing a paper on Texas history a student or researcher may determine the most important events occurring at the same time. Author: Donald W. Whisenhunt.

**CITIZENS AT LAST: THE WOMEN'S SUFFRAGE MOVEMENT IN TEXAS.** Ellen C. Temple. \$14.95. S, A.

Tells the story of the women's suffrage movement in Texas. Author: Elizabeth Taylor.



CLEAR FORK COWBOYS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. I, J, S.

The focus is on contemporary cowboys along the Clear Fork of the Brazos River, many of them third generation in this area. Numerous photographs illustrate the traditional lifestyle with its modern overtones and accoutrements.

CLIMATES OF TEXAS COUNTIES. Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$20.00. S, A.

A joint effort by University of Texas and Texas A&M researchers has produced these reports from 257 Texas weather stations. Climate descriptions covering the past thirty years are summarized.

CONCISE HISTORY OF TEXAS. Dallas *Morning News*. \$17.95; \$11.95 paper. J, S, A.

Mike Kingston's concise history of the state serves to refresh memories as well as impart new information.

COWBOY LIFE ON THE TEXAS PLAINS. Texas A&M University Press. ML.

The legacy of West Texas cowboys is immortalized in Ray Rector's ninety candid photographs of ranch life in the early years of this century. Editor: Margaret Rector.

COWBOYS. Harper/Collins. \$19.95. I, J, S.

Both the true-to-life and romanticized stories of cowboys are brought together in this book, which is indexed and filled with illustrations that include original photographs and poster art. The book was recommended in the NCSS Spring 1995 supplement, *Notable Children's Books*. Author: Martin W. Sandler.

COWBOYS IN THE OLD WEST. Greenhaven Press. \$21.19; \$16.95 to libraries. I, J, S.

Focusing on an Old West cattle drive, this volume reveals a typical cowboy's life. In the *Way People Live Series*.

COWBOYS OF THE WILD WEST. Ticknor & Fields. \$14.45. I, J.

This companion to Freedman's *Children of the Wild West* contains over fifty historic photographs of cowboys taken during the period 1860-1890, including cowboys from the XIT Ranch at the end of a long cattle drive to Montana. Text and photographs detail various aspects of the true life of the cowboy: as a herder on horseback; his clothes and equipment; activities of roundup, trail drive and ranch life; and images of the old-time cowboys. It provides a fascinating look behind the myth. Author: Russell Freedman

COWBOY STORIES FROM EAST TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. ML.

Eight entertaining anecdotal stories of contemporary life in East Texas give students a feel for traditional Texas ways, and will likely provoke classroom discussion. Author and illustrator: John Lash.



CZECH VOICES. Texas A&M University Press. \$18.95. J, S, A.

These translated recollections of nine early Czech immigrants who journeyed to America and settled in Texas appeared first in a Czech-American publication. They provide a unique perspective on a distinctive group of Central Texas settlers. Translated and edited by Clinton Machann and James W. Mendl Jr.

DALLAS: THE DECIDING YEARS: A HISTORICAL PORTRAIT. Encino Press. \$25.00. ML.

Text and two hundred rare photographs recapture the Dallas of 1841-1930. Author: A. C. Greene.

DICTIONARY OF TEXAS MISINFORMATION. Texas Monthly Press. (Out of print.) J, S, A.

Legends and simply false information are straightened out in this lighthearted but skillful interpretation of historical and present-day Texas. Author: Anne Dingus.

DOCUMENTS OF TEXAS HISTORY (1528-1993). State House Press. \$32.95; \$19.95 paper. J, S, A.

First compiled and published in 1963, the revised version includes important documents of the past thirty years. The documents cover political, geographic, economic, and social aspects of the development of Texas. Each document is preceded by a short paragraph placing the subject in historical perspective. Editors: Ernest Wallace and David M. Vigness; updated by George B. Ward.

THE DUST BOWL. Greenhaven Press. \$18.96; \$14.95 to libraries. I, J, S.

In the World Disasters Series. Each book in the series presents historical information about the time periods and the culture in which the disaster occurred.

EARLY TEXAS OIL. Texas A&M University Press. \$24.50. J, S, A.

This pictorial history with well over three hundred photographs of the time illustrates the history of the oil industry from 1866 to 1936. It offers an eyewitness record of a catalyst in the transformation of Texas. Author: Walter Rundell Jr.

EL RANCHO IN SOUTH TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.00. I, J, S, A.

A less familiar Spanish frontier institution, the private ranches near the border tell the story of continuity and change from 1750 until the present day. The book includes maps and over one hundred photographs. Author: Joe S. Graham.

EXPLORERS IN EARLY TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

The author highlights six of the major explorers who ventured through Texas between 1519 and 1778, and also notes lesser explorations. The book has maps, many illustrations,



and reproducible classroom activities. Author: Betsy Warren. This and the author's *Indians Who Lived In Texas* (see below) share an activity book by Michael Shepherd (\$12.95).

**EXPLORING THE ALAMO LEGENDS.** Republic of Texas Press. \$12.95. I, J, S.

Many questions about the Alamo remain unanswered. Here they are investigated and discussed in a manner appropriate for young students of Texas history. The book is illustrated and comes complete with endnotes, sources, and an index. Author: Wallace O. Chariton.

**A FIELD GUIDE TO STONE ARTIFACTS OF TEXAS INDIANS.** Gulf Publishing Co. \$29.95; \$17.95 paper. J, S, A.

A comprehensive guide to identifying arrowheads found in Texas. Each description provides a date for the artifact, a map showing where it is found in the state, and a list of representative sites, as well as sources for further research. Authors: Ellen Sue Turner and Thomas R. Hester.

**A FIELD GUIDE TO TEXAS SNAKES.** Gulf Publishing Co. \$24.95; \$14.95 paper. J, S, A.

The author identifies the 113 species and subspecies of snakes found in Texas. In addition to including range maps and an extensive glossary and index, the work gives directions for locating many unusual and elusive species. Author: Alan Tennant.

**THE FIFTY BEST BOOKS ON TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. (Out of print.) A.

Noted author discusses what he considers to be the fifty best books that have Texas as their main subject or chief setting. Author: A. C. Greene.

**THE FIRST TEXANS.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$14.95. I.

The author describes thirteen tribes that lived in Texas over many generations, and three others whose stay here was shorter. Sections describe food, clothing, shelter, weapons, tools, religion, and the children. A classroom guide is provided.

**A FORGOTTEN GLORY.** Texian Press. \$11.95. J, S, A.

Details the history and importance of all missions established in the area of present-day Texas. Author: James W. Burke.

**FORT DAVIS.** Texas State Historical Association. \$4.95. S, A.

Fort Davis, one of the army's largest western posts, was built in the 1850s. Illustrated with twenty-five, black-and-white photographs and a map, the book recounts the occupation of the fort and details of daily life. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: Robert Wooster.



FRONTIER FORTS OF TEXAS. Texian Press. \$9.95. J, S, A.

The story of over two dozen frontier forts reaching across the state and shaping its early history. Some are still standing, others just memories.

GERMAN SEED IN TEXAS SOIL: IMMIGRANT FARMERS IN NINETEENTH-CENTURY TEXAS. University of Texas Press. \$12.95 paper. S, A.

When Germans immigrated to Texas in the last century they influenced, and were in turn influenced by, the agricultural life that surrounded them. This is a study of ethnic history that can be set in several useful contexts. Author: Terry G. Jordan.

GONE FROM TEXAS: OUR LOST ARCHITECTURAL HERITAGE. Texas A&M University Press. \$29.95. A.

While focusing on those structures that have disappeared from the Texas landscape, the book is an important study of the history of architecture in Texas. Although the work is a sometimes depressing catalog of fine structures that no longer exist, it offers an in-depth examination of a variety of building types, from the prehistoric to the modern. It is also a social history of the buildings, placing them in an historical context and making it a valuable resource for the study of Texas history. Author: Willard B. Robinson.

GOVERNING TEXAS: AN OPPORTUNITY TO PARTICIPATE. Austin *American-Statesman*. \$15.00. J, S.

The curriculum, developed through the resources of Newspapers in Education, introduces students to Texas state government. The lessons are derived from articles by key government officials and others, and include selected newspaper activities and facsimile documentation. This is an innovative packet that encourages creative thinking.

GOVERNOR ANN RICHARDS AND OTHER TEXAS WOMEN: A PICTORIAL HISTORY FROM INDIANS TO ASTRONAUTS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$24.95. J, S, A.

The lives of Texas women from the pioneer times until today are presented in some 250 captioned photographs and thumbnail biographies. Besides the famous and publicly successful, numerous women are featured who have worked in less prominent fields of endeavor. Author: Ruthe Winegarten.

GOVERNORS OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. J, S.

An eighty-eight-page book that includes biographies, photographs, and further information about the governors of Texas. The pages outline the powers of the governor and describe the Governor's Mansion, one of the oldest buildings in the nation still in use as a chief executive's home.

A GUIDE TO THE HISTORY OF TEXAS. Greenwood Press. \$69.50. A.

This definitive reference work identifies and locates a body of information useful to schools, libraries, and museums. Organized in two major sections, the book includes



specialist-written essays on themes and individuals, and an overview of the major archives in Texas. Editors: Light Townsend Cummins and Alvin R. Bailey Jr.

**HECHO EN TEJAS: TEXAS MEXICAN FOLK ARTS AND CRAFTS.** Texas Folklore Society. \$29.95. J, S, A.

The scholarly yet readable essays in this book describe the creation and uses of a variety of objects. The essays introduce the traditional aspects of Hispanic culture expressed across the state from the Lower Rio Grande Valley to the ranches of the western boundaries. Editor: Joe S. Graham.

**HISPANIC TEXAS.** University of Texas Press. \$19.95. ML.

Hundreds of photographs, contemporary and historical, accompany this multifaceted tribute to Hispanic culture in Texas. The subjects include architecture, ranching and rodeo traditions, the Catholic religion, and much more. Authors: Helen Simons and Cathryn A. Hoyt.

**HISTORIC SITES OF TEXAS.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. (Out of print.) ML.

History comes alive through the text and photographs of seventy-two significant places across Texas. Author: June Rayfield Welch.

**HISTORY OF COTTON IN TEXAS.** Natural Fibers Information Center; Bureau of Business Research, University of Texas. \$5.00. S, A.

Traces the historical and economic development of cotton and its related industries in Texas from the earliest days.

**A HISTORY OF THE FRENCH LEGATION: ALPHONSE DUBÓIS DE SALIGNY AND HIS HOUSE.** Texas State Historical Association. \$4.50. S, A.

This volume relates the story of the French Legation in Austin. Built in 1840-1841, the Legation was the residence of the chargé d'affaires from King Louis Phillipe to the fledgling Republic of Texas. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: Kenneth Hafertepe.

**HOUSTON: A HISTORICAL PORTRAIT.** Encino Press. \$25.00. I, J, S, A.

Text spans 150 years of the city's history until the 1980s, illustrated with two hundred photographs and engravings. Author: John L. Davis.

**I'LL GATHER MY GEESE.** Texas A&M University Press. \$18.50. J, S, A.

From the vantage point of her ninety-five years, Hallie Stillwell remembers back to 1918 when she arrived as a bride at the ranch near the Mexican border. She has remained there, not far from the Big Bend National Park for well over seventy years. Author: Hallie Crawford Stillwell.

I'M GOING TO TEXAS: *YO VOY A TEJAS*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; \$4.95 paper. P, I.

Students can enjoy this illustrated, rhyming account of a child's excitement at visiting Texas. The text is in both English and Spanish.

INDIANOLA: THE MOTHER OF WESTERN TEXAS. State House Press. \$17.95. J, S, A.

Indianola, which once rivalled Galveston, has been a ghost port since it was destroyed by a storm in 1886. This revised edition, like the original version, provides an introduction to nineteenth-century life in coastal Texas. Author: Bronson Malsch.

INDIANS WHO LIVED IN TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. P, I, J.

An award-winning book, this classic story of the ten tribes native to Texas describes the varied lives they led, and supplements the text with beautiful illustrations. Author: Betsy Warren. This and the author's *Explorers In Early Texas* (see above) share an activity book by Michael Shepherd (\$12.95).

INDIAN TRIBES OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I.

The book addresses the importance of geography in determining the settlement of Indians in Texas; fully supported by activities, social studies kits, teacher's guide, and more. Author: Richard Sorensen.

LAND: A HISTORY OF THE TEXAS GENERAL LAND OFFICE. Texas General Land Office. \$5.96. J, S, A.

The book presents an overview of Texas land policies and the agency which administers them, and is illustrated with numerous maps and pictures.

LANDSCAPES OF TEXAS. Texas A&M University Press. \$24.95. J, S, A.

The varied geographic regions of Texas are shown in photographs taken from *Texas Highways* magazine. The introduction by John Graves describes Texas as it was once and as it is now, commenting on the state's history and use of the land.

LEGENDARY LADIES OF TEXAS. University of North Texas Press. \$17.95. A.

A volume in the Texas Folklore Society Series, the book has biographical sketches of Texas women whose deeds have so struck the public imagination that they have become archetypes. Emily Morgan, Belle Starr, Sally Scull, Sophia Porter, and Elisabet Ney are among those discussed. Editor: Francis E. Abernethy.

LEGENDARY TEXIANS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95 per volume. I, J.

Four volumes bring to life the stories of twenty-nine legendary Texians, some are well known as politicians, and others are remembered folk heroes.



LEGENDS OF TEXAS. Pelican Publishing Co., Inc. Two volumes. \$4.95 each. J, S, A.

J. Frank Dobie edited these two volumes of legendary yarns: *Lost Mines and Buried Treasures* (Vol. 1), and *Pirate's Gold and Other Tales* (Vol. 2), both filled with the spirit of adventure, independence and mystery that Texans enjoy.

LET'S CELEBRATE TEXAS: PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95. I, J.

Updated in 1995, the forty lessons and reproducible activities can supplement the regular curriculum in Texas studies for grades four through seven. Development stages, learning styles, and interest level are all considered in this material, presented here with a loose-leaf binder. Compiled by June H. Buhler, Patricia A. Moseley, and Betty O. Mason.

LIFE ON THE KING RANCH. Texas A&M University Press. \$12.95. J, S, A.

A first-hand account of growing up on the legendary King Ranch during the 1920s. The author recalls the gruelling work, the cattle, and the people that created the heritage of the ranch. Illustrated with photographs and drawings. Author: Frank Goodwyn.

THE LOBLOLLY BOOK I and II. Texas Monthly Press. (Out of print.) J, S, A.

This anthology of student-written articles on Texas folkways was inspired by the Foxfire books that arose in the hills of north Georgia. *The Loblolly Book* is a Texas counterpart in which folktales and reminiscences give us a sense of old-time Texas. The selections are from five Texas student publications, two of which are published by Junior Historian chapters. Students at Gary High School have published *Loblolly* since 1973. The *Old Timer* has been published at Albany High School since 1975. Editor: Thad Sitton.

LOCAL SCHOOLS: EXPLORING THEIR HISTORY. American Association for State and Local History. \$14.95. A.

Addressing the question, "What do our schools do?" the book views ways in which civil and social organizations play important roles in education and in the critical development of every community. Author: Ronald E. Butchart.

LONE STAR DINOSAURS. Texas A&M University Press. \$27.95. S, A.

In this volume, world-renowned paleontologist Louis Jacobs takes readers on a trip through time across Texas, describing the state as dinosaurs saw it; how fossils are formed; what sounds the animals may have made; and how extinction might have occurred. Based on research so new that some of the dinosaurs have not yet been named, and with detailed paintings and drawings by Karen Carr.

THE LONE STAR STATE DIVIDED: TEXANS AND THE CIVIL WAR. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. J, S, A.

Recognizing the shortage of information available to students, schoolteacher Merle Durham brought together facts, figures, biographical information, and descriptions of

battles and the Reconstruction period. Maps and photographic illustrations round out the text.

**LULAC: THE EVOLUTION OF A MEXICAN-AMERICAN POLITICAL ORGANIZATION.** University of Texas Press. \$11.95 paper. A.

The League of United Latin American Citizens was founded in Corpus Christi in 1929. This is the first comprehensive history of LULAC. It shows how the Mexican American community is more clearly heard now than it was when the organization was begun.

**THE MAGNIFICENT BARBARIANS: LITTLE-TOLD TALES OF THE TEXAS REVOLUTION.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$18.95. J, S.

Unfamiliar stories of the immigrants to Texas and the characters who participated in the Texas Revolution are included here, although many names are unfamiliar. They are seen scattered across the state map, their legacy to nineteenth-century beginnings. Authors: Bill and Marjorie K. Walraven.

**THE MAMMALS OF TRANS-PECOS TEXAS.** Texas A&M University Press. \$12.50. J, S, A.

Discusses the mammals found in the Trans-Pecos region of West Texas. Author: David J. Schmidly.

**MARIACHI BISHOP: THE LIFE STORY OF PATRICK FLORES.** Corona Publishing Co. \$6.95. J, S.

The son of migrants, Patrick Flores became the first Hispanic Catholic bishop in the United States. Author: Martin McMurtrey, S.M.

**THE MELTING POT: ETHNIC CUISINE IN TEXAS.** Institute of Texan Cultures. \$12.95. J, S, A.

Each section of this cookbook is devoted to a different ethnic group and contains a brief history of the culture. The work also contains a number of historic photographs.

**THE MEXICAN AMERICANS.** Chelsea House. \$16.95; \$9.95 paper. ML.

This book covers more than just Texas's Mexican Americans, but it is included here because of the quality of its writing, its use of rarely seen photographs, and its non-traditional point of view of both past and modern history. Especially striking is the account of U.S. exploitation of Mexican immigrants over the centuries. Author: Julie Catalano.

**MEXICAN-AMERICAN YOUTH ORGANIZATION: AVANT-GARDE OF THE CHICANO MOVEMENT IN TEXAS.** University of Texas Press. \$40.00; \$16.95 paper. A.

The past generation has seen a new chapter in Texas history with the integration of minority groups into the mainstream. This account of the beginnings of a 1960s youth organization contributes to an understanding of the Sixties protest movements and the social and political conditions that precipitated them. Author: Armando Navarro.



**MICROFILM COLLECTION.** Institute of Texan Cultures. Prices vary; not all are currently available. S, A.

Three series of microfilm materials comprise this collection. 1) Early Czech Newspapers of Texas. Eyewitness accounts of everyday lives in Central Texas Czech settlements at La Grange and Hallettsville. 2) Early Texas Newspapers. Set of three rolls; newspapers from Houston, Indianola, and Victoria describe the period from 1840 to 1860. 3) Translations of Statistical Reports of Texas, 1782-1836 and Sources Documenting the Blacks in Texas, 1603-1803. Set of three rolls; demographic and statistical data based on seventeenth-through nineteenth-century Spanish records. The general manuscripts document social and business aspects of the black experience in Texas.

**MY FELLOW TEXANS.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95. I, J.

Mini-biographies, supported by photographs, personal quotes, and an item or two of contemporary trivia, bring together a lively picture of the twenty-two governors of Texas. The lighthearted approach does not detract from the serious information the book contains. Author: Dede W. Casad.

**MY REMEMBERS: A BLACK SHARECROPPER'S RECOLLECTIONS OF THE DEPRESSION.** University of North Texas Press. \$18.95. S, A.

Warm recollections of everyday family life and survival in an impoverished farming community near Plano in the 1930s. In the author's folk-speech and spelling patterns, readers learn about work, social pleasures, and celebrations of the time. Line illustrations by Burnice Breckenridge. Author: Eddie Stimpson Jr. ("Sarge").

**MYTHS AND FOLKTALES OF THE ALABAMA-COUSHATTA INDIANS.** Encino Press. \$17.50. ML.

Over forty-five stories collected since 1931, as well as historical sketches from the southeast Texas Indian tribe. Author: Howard N. Martin.

**THE NEWS FROM BROWNSVILLE.** Texas State Historical Association. \$29.95. J, S, A.

In her charming letters home, Helen Chapman comments on social conditions along the Rio Grande when she and her husband, the first quartermaster at Fort Brown, were founding citizens of Brownsville. Editor: Caleb Coker.

**OFF THE BEATEN TRAIL.** Texian Press. \$10.95. J, S, A.

This is a lively rendering of Texas history. The five hundred pages are arranged in seven divisions, ranging chronologically from the prehistory in the Glen Rose Dinosaur Valley to the present-day Big Bend country. Author: W. E. (Ed) Syers.

**THE OLD STONE FORT.** Texas State Historical Association. \$2.95. S, A.

The story is told of the Old Stone Fort in Nacogdoches. Constructed in 1779 the building had numerous functions up until it was torn down in 1902. Later a replica of the

original building was built on the grounds of Stephen F. Austin State University. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: Archie P. McDonald.

OLDTIMERS. State House Press. \$24.95. S, A.

Warmly recommended by J. Frank Dobie, this collection of over fifty true pioneer stories was originally published in 1939. It covers the development of the frontier in southwestern Texas from the time of the Civil War until the 1930s. Author: Florence Fenley.

100 DAYS IN TEXAS: THE ALAMO LETTERS. Republic of Texas Press. \$14.95. J, S, A.

The surviving Alamo documents, including letters, diary entries, newspaper articles, official government proceedings, muster rolls, etc., are gathered in a single volume. Photographs, charts, and maps round out this informative account of the period between December 9, 1835, and March 17, 1836. Editor: Wallace O. Chariton.

1001 TEXAS PLACE NAMES. University of Texas Press; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. J, S, A.

Each of Texas's 254 counties is represented by at least two entries—a short historical narrative, and an account of the origin of the name. Author: Fred Tarpley.

OUR TEJANO HEROES. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. S, A.

Twenty Texan Hispanic leaders are profiled. Five of them lived at the time of the Texas Revolution; others are more contemporary figures.

PASS IT ON. Texas Folklife Resources. Price to be announced. ML.

Curriculum guide featuring in-depth articles about folk artists and traditions, with photographs, discussion, and writing suggestions, as well as a bibliography and discography.

A PERSONAL HISTORY: THE AFRO-AMERICAN TEXANS. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$8.95. I, J.

A fine introduction to African American history, the book captures the interest of children with its interviews, question-and-answer format, and numerous drawings and paintings. Brief sketches of African American heroes and common people who have influenced Texas history—from Esteban, Kiamata, Scott Joplin, Dorris Miller, and Barbara Jordan to military figures, cowboys, and sportsmen. Authors: Marian L. Martinello and Melvin M. Sance.

PIONEER WOMEN IN TEXAS. State House Press. \$29.95. ML.

Life in early Texas, in the days before independence, is recaptured in this 1929 book. It includes a collection of almost eighty accounts that indicate the regional social attitudes of the time. Author: Annie Doom Pickrell.



PUPPETS U.S.A. TEXAS: EXPLORING FOLKLORE, MUSIC AND CRAFTS WITH PUPPETS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95. P, I.

Ethnic folktales and songs enrich these puppet projects that can be incorporated with plays, improvisation, and other classroom programs teaching about Texas. Authors: Nancy Renfro and Debbie Sullivan.

REBELLION IN THE BORDERLANDS: ANARCHISM AND THE PLAN OF SAN DIEGO, 1904-1923. University of Oklahoma Press. \$24.95. S, A.

This episode in twentieth-century Texas history is recalled in an illustrated account of how Mexicans and Mexican Americans planned to liberate Texas from American rule by exterminating all adult North American males in the Lower Rio Grande Valley. Author: James A. Sandos.

RECONSTRUCTION. Greenhaven Press. \$24.99; \$14.44 paper. J, S, A.

This anthology illustrates the significant debates surrounding this important period. Issues covered include the restoration of the states of the former Confederacy to the Union, aid to former slaves, the protection of civil rights, and the rebuilding of the South. In the Opposing Viewpoints in American History Series.

REMEMBER GOLIAD! A HISTORY OF LA BAHÍA. Texas State Historical Association. \$5.95. J, S.

Tells the sad story of James Fannin and his men, who surrendered to Mexican forces with the understanding that they would be treated as prisoners of war, and then were massacred on orders from Santa Anna. In the Texas State Historical Association's Popular History Series. Author: Craig H. Roell.

ROADS OF TEXAS. Shearer Publishing. \$12.95. J, S, A.

Colored maps guide readers to many places to see and activities to enjoy in the state.

SAN ANTONIO: A HISTORICAL PORTRAIT. Encino Press. \$25.00. I, J, S, A.

The text describes the several historical faces of San Antonio and is illustrated with some 150 photographs. Author: John L. Davis.

SAN ANTONIO IN THE 18TH CENTURY. Institute of Texan Cultures. (Out of print.) A.

The political, economic, and social life of the Spanish mission colony in San Antonio is recorded in this book, originally published by the San Antonio Bicentennial Heritage Committee.

SECOND FATHERLAND. Texas A&M University Press. \$13.95. J, S, A.

Max Krueger's autobiography is explained in the subtitle, *The Life and Times of a German Immigrant*. Krueger came to Texas from Germany as a penniless teenager, and



tells the story not only of his own fortunes, but of the transformation of the state during the ensuing sixty years. Editor: Marilyn McAdams Sibley.

SERIES BY J. FRANK DOBIE. University of Texas Press. J, S, A.

*Cow People* (\$14.95): reminiscences by the cow people themselves of the fading memories of a bygone Texas. *The Longhorns* (\$9.95): the value of legend and folklore are captured in the multifaceted history of the Longhorn cattle in Texas. *Out of the Old Rock* (\$9.95): stories of the adventurous men and women who came "out of the rock" are told in this illustrated book. *Rattlesnakes* (\$11.95): observations, yarns, and legends of the habits and dispositions of the rattlesnake are recounted.

A SHARED EXPERIENCE: THE HISTORY, ARCHITECTURE AND HISTORIC DESIGNATIONS OF THE LOWER RIO GRANDE HERITAGE CORRIDOR. Texas Historical Commission. \$15.00. S, A.

The Lower Rio Grande Valley, one of the most neglected regions in Texas history books, is introduced with an array of reports, anecdotes, and illustrations describing the material reminders of the past. The study is one part of a major project to revitalize some of the old towns along the military highway that led from Brownsville to Laredo. The author, Mario Sanchez, is an architect. A teacher's guide (\$10) explores numerous ways to learn about the region, and includes innovative lesson plans for upper elementary and junior high school students. Editor: Kitty Henderson.

SINGIN' TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$17.95 paper. I, J, S.

Ninety of the best known and most representative folk songs, with historical notes and music and a 160-minute cassette tape. Author: Francis Edward Abernethy; music arranged by Dan Beaty.

SIX YEARS WITH THE TEXAS RANGERS, 1875 TO 1881. University of Nebraska Press. \$9.95. S, A.

A classic account of how the Texas Rangers maintained law and order on the frontier. Author: James B. Gillett; editor: Milo Milton Quaife.

SLAVERY. Greenhaven Press. \$24.99; \$14.44 paper. J, S, A.

This comprehensive anthology presents primary source documents that discuss American slavery from its origins to its demise. The views of slaves, slave owners, abolitionists, and others are placed side by side to create running debates over the nature and morality of slavery and its alternatives. In the Opposing Viewpoints in American History Series.

SOUTHWESTERN HISTORICAL QUARTERLY CUMULATIVE INDEX. Texas State Historical Association. \$25.00; \$17.50 paper (Vol. 2 out of print.) A.

Published in four volumes, the cumulative index is cross-referenced with subjects and



subheadings to facilitate use. The most recent volume indexes articles through volume 80, published in 1977. An annual index appears in each April issue of the journal.

STONE ARTIFACTS OF TEXAS INDIANS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$17.95. J, S, A.

The book identifies arrowheads and other stone tools used by prehistoric Texans. It provides students with a sound introduction to the subject, as well as being a fine resource for field trips. Authors: Ellen Sue Turner and Thomas R. Hester.

THE STORY OF THE ALAMO. Children's Press. \$11.67; \$2.95 paper. I, J.

The history and causes of the Texas Revolution, the siege of the Alamo, and the victory at San Jacinto are briefly narrated, with a brief sketch of the heroes of that era included. Brown-and-black drawings illustrate the clearly written text. Author: Norman Richards.

THE STORY OF TEXAS. Shearer Publishing. \$8.95. I.

The history of Texas spans prehistory to the space age in this colorful book by an established Texas author. Illustrated with sketches and paintings. Author: John Edward Weems.

TALES OF THE TEXIANS: A LIVING TEXAS HISTORY TAILORED TO THE FOURTH-GRADE READER. Dorothy Sinclair Enterprises. \$14.95; \$9.95 paper; Teacher's guide \$4.50. I.

A 140-page book with an accompanying teacher's guide tells about the early Texans who lived during the Revolutionary and Republic eras of Texas history. The book is divided into twenty-three chapters and includes sketches of such Texas heroes as Ben Milam, Jim Bowie, Davy Crockett, José Antonio Navarro, and Sam Houston. Author: Dorothy T. Sinclair.

TEXANS: A STORY OF TEXAN CULTURES FOR YOUNG PEOPLE. Institute of Texan Cultures; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$21.95. Teacher's guide \$4.95. ML.

The traditions and lifestyles of different ethnic groups in Texas are described as a child's adventure through Texas history. The book shares a delightful selection of games and activities corresponding to each ethnic group. Author: Barbara Stanush.

THE TEXANS BOOKS SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Prices vary. S, A.

This series, in contrast to *The Texians and The Texans* pamphlet series, is a detailed study of various ethnic groups and their contributions to Texas history. There are currently seven ethnic histories in this expanded book-length series. Titles include: *The Danish Texans*, *The English Texans*, *The German Texans*, *The Irish Texans*; *The Japanese Texans*, *The Polish Texans*, and *The Wendish Texans*.

A TEXAN'S GARDEN OF TRIVIA. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. J, S, A.

A collection of trivia questions about Texas that is intended to both entertain and educate. The questions cover such topics as history and its heroes, oil, public servants,



famous outlaws, Texas high school athletic teams, and "Firsts, Bests, Longests, [and] Biggest." Author: June Rayfield Welch.

TEXAS. Archer M. Huntington Gallery, University of Texas. \$8.00. ML.

The facts and attitudes of Texas are whimsically captured in this book for teachers and others interested in the history of the state. Illustrated with reproductions of more than one hundred paintings. Authors: Becky Duval Reese, Susan M. Mayer, Arthur J. Mayer.

TEXAS: A LITERARY PORTRAIT. Corona Publishing Co. \$37.50; \$16.95 paper. S, A.

A sampling of Texas writings; fifty well-known literary figures comment on the state and its people. Illustrated with black-and-white photographs. Author: Don Graham.

TEXAS: A LONE STAR HISTORY. Golden Owl Publishing Co. \$35.00. J, S, A.

In the Jackdaws Portfolio of Historical Documents Series. The portfolio, with an integrated study guide and reproducible masters, includes five broadsheet essays and thirteen historical documents. The essays cover the following topics: natives, explorers, and the land; Texas under Spain and Mexico; the Republic, Union, and Confederacy; Reconstruction and Growth; and Modern Texas. The thirteen documents cover the time period from 1813 to 1909.

TEXAS: A MODERN HISTORY. University of Texas Press; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$24.95. S, A.

This is written for the general reader, but its importance for students is the focus on the twentieth century—the period in which Texas, like other regions of the country, changed from a rural to an urban society. Author: David G. McComb.

TEXAS: AN ILLUSTRATED HISTORY. Oxford University Press. \$21.95. J, S, A.

This history of Texas treads chronologically across time, focusing especially on the people of the state. A selected list of museums and historic sites provides concise, useful information appropriate for teachers considering field trips. The illustrations add a special dimension. Author: David G. McComb.

TEXAS: A SALUTE FROM ABOVE. Shearer Publishing. \$34.95; \$17.99 paper. ML.

Over 240 stunning aerial photographs reveal the dimensions of the Lone Star State, from the wide open spaces of the western reaches to the more populated areas of the east. Commentary by T. R. Fehrenbach provides further information.

TEXAS ALPHABET. Pelican Publishing Co., Inc. \$12.95. P, I.

The youngest students are led through the alphabet by Texas Jack, a native jackrabbit, learning the highlights of Texas history as they travel. A letter is allocated to a person, event, or institution in the state—for example, "A is for Alamo." Author: James Rice.



TEXAS AND THE MEXICAN WAR. Social Studies School Service. \$32.50. J, S.

A re-creation of a Congressional Crisis Session in the U.S. History Reenactments Series. Sentiments expressed by both sides in the Texas/Mexico conflict are gathered in this packet that includes appropriate materials for three to four hours of classroom recreation, complete with preparation and debriefing materials. Readings and instructions are included together with the teacher's guide, thirty-five, eight-page student handbooks, handouts, required readings, and questions for tests before and after the unit.

TEXAS BIBLIOGRAPHY. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. (Out of print.) ML.

A one-volume bibliography of Texas history for both students and teachers. The major divisions include the Indians; Spanish years; Mexican period; Texas Republic; early statehood; Confederate Texas; late-nineteenth-century Texas; twentieth-century Texas; general biographies; frontier and pioneer life, 1835-1936; Texas rangers; folklore of Texas; diplomacy; travelers' accounts; ethnic groups in Texas; architecture, art and nature; and children's literature. Editors: Gilbert R. Cruz and James A. Irby.

TEXAS BOUNDARIES: EVOLUTION OF THE STATE'S COUNTIES. Texas A&M University Press. \$29.50. S, A.

A series of maps and the stories behind them tell the history of Texas boundaries from the early municipalities to the present-day 254 governmental counties, and describes the origins of many of the county seats and names. Author: Luke Gournay.

THE TEXAS CENTENNIAL SONG BOOK. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$3.50. ML.

Sesquicentennial edition of music and lyrics for many songs. First published in 1935.

THE TEXAS CHEROKEES: A PEOPLE BETWEEN TWO FIRES, 1819-1840. University of Oklahoma Press. \$11.95 paper. S, A.

A detailed study of the changing relations and attitudes between Anglo Texans and several hundred Cherokees who settled along the Sabine, Neches, and Angelina Rivers in East Texas early in the nineteenth century. Author: Dianna Everett.

THE TEXAS COURTHOUSE and THE TEXAS COURTHOUSE REVISITED. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. (Out of print.) J, S, A.

All the county courthouses in the state are portrayed, with many additional photographs added to the companion volume. Author: June Rayfield Welch.

TEXAS ETHNIC HISTORY SERIES. Institute of Texan Cultures. Prices vary. Ethnic pamphlets \$4.95 each. S, A.

A series of books that introduce in separate volumes the several ethnic and national groups that came to Texas. Those currently in print or scheduled for reprinting include: *The Danish Texans*, John L. Davis; *The English Texans*, Thomas W. Cutrer; *The German Texans*, Glen E. Lich; *The Irish Texans*, John Brendan Flannery; *The Japanese Texans*,



Thomas K. Walls; *The Hungarian Texans*, James Patrick McGuire; *The Polish Texans*, T. Lindsay Baker; and *The Swedish Texans*, Larry E. Scott. The Institute also publishes a series of ethnic pamphlets—shorter softbound books illustrated with photographs. Subjects include Texans of the following heritage: African American, Belgian, French, German (not in print), Greek, Indian, Italian, and Jewish (not in print).

TEXAS FOLK MEDICINE. Encino Press. \$15.00. J, S, A.

Numerous folk cures, remedies, and preventives gathered from over half the counties in Texas. Author: John Q. Anderson.

TEXAS FURNITURE: THE CABINETMAKERS AND THEIR WORK, 1840-1880. University of Texas Press. (Out of print.) A.

A major study of the role of cabinetmakers in Texas, this book is an invaluable resource that places the furniture in the context of the history of those who made and used it. The catalogue is supported by a strong essay that draws on a variety of sources, including local records, census material, and oral history material, to give us a valuable reference on the furniture industry and craft of nineteenth-century Texas. Authors: Lonn Taylor and David B. Warren.

THE TEXAS GOVERNOR. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$17.95. J, S, A.

Photographs and biographies of the men and the woman who have held the position of Governor of Texas. Author: June Rayfield Welch.

THE TEXAS GOVERNOR'S MANSION. Texas State Historical Association. (Out of print.) ML.

This generously illustrated book by ex-residents Governor and Mrs. Price Daniel not only deals with the history of the executive mansion, but also contains biographical sketches of all the governors and their first ladies. The book has over two hundred illustrations, including thirty-eight color plates. Authors: Jean and Price Daniel and Dorothy Blodgett.

TEXAS GRAVEYARDS: A CULTURAL LEGACY. University of Texas Press. \$11.95. A.

This work discusses the material culture found in the graveyards of three Texas ethnic groups: Southerners, Mexicans, and Germans. In addition to its scholarly value, teachers interested in graveyards from a personal or genealogical viewpoint will find the book most interesting. Author: Terry G. Jordan.

TEXAS HISTORY STORIES. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I, J.

Cabeza de Vaca, Robert E. Lee, La Salle, the Alamo, and "drawing the black beans" are featured among major personalities and events in Texas prior to the Civil War. Author: E. G. Littlejohn. An activity book (\$6.95), designed for use with the stories, has numerous puzzles and map activities.



TEXAS HOMES OF THE 19TH CENTURY. University of Texas Press. \$45.00. A.

A beautiful, coffee-table-style book that surveys the evolution of Texas homes in the nineteenth century. The work includes text and more than two hundred photographs. Author: Drury Blakeley Alexander; photographs by Todd Webb.

TEXAS IN WORDS AND PICTURES. Children's Press. \$10.60. P.

This easy-to-read presentation of Texas geography, history, and economics, with a section on famous Texans, was written by a second-grade teacher. Colorful photographs illustrate the text. Reference aids include maps, a page of facts about Texas, a brief time line, and an index. Author: Dennis B. Fradin.

TEXAS LOG BUILDINGS: A FOLK ARCHITECTURE. University of Texas Press. \$19.95. ML.

A leading cultural geographer focuses on one of the most distinctive building forms of Texas, the log structure. He considers both the different forms of log architecture and the social and natural context for these structures. Located, for the most part, east of the Balcones Fault, these buildings were an important part of the architectural tradition in Texas. Author: Terry G. Jordan.

TEXAS LORE. Red Rose Studio. \$45.90 the set. Vols 1-4 combined, \$12.95; Vols 11-12 combined, \$6.95; single volumes, \$3.95 each. ML.

Twelve short volumes present Texas history in comic-book format. Drawn from a cartoon feature launched in the *Houston Post* in 1982, it presents a mass of information in an entertaining way. Ideal for students with reading difficulties. Volumes 1-4 have been reassembled in a single paperbound volume. The most recent additions, Volumes 11 and 12, come in a set and focus on Spanish settlement. Author: Patrick M. Reynolds.

TEXAS MAMMALS. EAST OF THE BALCONES FAULT ZONE. Texas A&M University Press. \$19.95; \$12.95 paper. J, S, A.

Provides accounts of the ninety kinds of mammals found in East Texas. The scientific name, identifying features, subspecies, distribution, habitat, and life history for each mammal are listed with extensive remarks and references. Author: David J. Schmidly.

TEXAS MISSIONS AND LANDMARKS. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$7.95. S.

The history of Texas's missions are explored in this work. Author: Jack Harmon; copperplate etchings by Warren Hunter.

TEXAS MUSEUM DIRECTORY. Texas Historical Commission. Free. ML.

This seventy-six-page booklet contains a complete annotated listing of the 410 history and art museums in Texas. Information includes location, hours, price of admission, a brief description of collections, special events, annual attendance, director, and mail/telephone data. Published in 1989.



TEXAS MUSEUMS: A GUIDEBOOK. University of Texas Press; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$16.95; \$8.95 paper. A.

Published in 1983, this guide to Texas museums includes all the information needed to plan field trips and family outings. It includes many outdoor recreation areas, wildlife refuges, zoos, and parks, which frequently feature fascinating instructional displays and programs. Confirm information before setting out as there have been changes since the book first appeared. Authors: Paula Eyrich Tyler and Ron Tyler.

TEXAS PUBLIC BUILDINGS OF THE 19TH CENTURY. University of Texas Press. \$29.95. A.

Beginning with a short essay on the development of architecture during the Spanish Colonial period, this book examines fully those architectural developments that took place during the Mexican period, the era of the Republic, the antebellum state, and the post-Civil War and turn-of-the-century periods. Author: Willard B. Robinson; photographs by Todd Webb.

TEXAS RANGER. Texas A&M University Press. \$12.95. J, S, A.

John Coffee Hays arrived in Texas in 1836, barely missing the battles of the Revolution. At nineteen he was urged by Sam Houston to join the new group, the Rangers. As a Ranger he was a key figure in the ultimate defeat of the Comanches, and led the Rangers during the Mexican War. Author: James Kimmins Greer.

THE TEXAS RANGERS: IMAGES AND INCIDENTS. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$29.95; \$19.95 paper. S, A.

This book, with more than 230 historical photographs, paintings, and maps, salutes the Texas Rangers and puts in perspective the many myths surrounding them. Author: John L. Davis.

TEXAS TEARS AND TEXAS SUNSHINE: VOICES OF FRONTIER WOMEN. Texas A&M University Press. \$12.95; Teacher's Guide \$2.50. J, S.

In this work Texas women tell of Indian attacks, buffalo hunts, honeymooning on a trail drive, and "high society" on the frontier. Editor: Ella Powell Exley.

TEXAS TRAILBLAZERS SERIES. Texas Trailblazer Preservation Association. J, S, A.

The first twenty-five of a series of detailed, one-page "bulletins" or biographies on African American Texans have been gathered into a single volume. The series is available to members of the Association. Author: Patricia Smith Prather.

TEXAS TREES: A FRIENDLY GUIDE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. J, S, A.

This guide to Texas trees supplies scientific and popular names, a range map, and leaf identification as well as colorfully written information on their cultivation, histories, legends, and usage. Authors: Paul Cox and Patty Leslie.



TEXAS VISTAS: SELECTIONS FROM THE *SOUTHWESTERN HISTORICAL QUARTERLY*. Texas State Historical Association. \$9.95. A.

*Quarterly* articles have been selected to cover Texas history from the earliest Spanish exploration to the present. A balanced sampling follows the state's political, social, economic, and military history. Editors: Ralph A. Wooster and Robert A. Calvert.

TEXAS WEATHER. University of Texas Press. \$14.95. A.

An informative guide that includes graphs, charts, and explanations of average temperatures, rainfall, snowfall, and windspeeds throughout the state. Author: George W. Bomar.

TEXAS? WHAT DO YOU KNOW ABOUT THE LONE STAR STATE? Texas Christian University Press. \$12.95. I, J, S, A.

This is a book filled with questions and answers pertaining to Texas history, geography, and ever so much more. Author: Archie P. McDonald.

TEXAS WILDFLOWERS: A FIELD GUIDE. University of Texas Press. \$24.95; \$12.95 paper. ML.

Presents three hundred Texas wildflowers in full-color photographs with clear and concise descriptions. Authors: Campbell and Lynn Loughmiller.

TEXAS WOMEN: A CELEBRATION OF HISTORY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$8.95. I, J, S.

This book helps integrate women's history into the social studies curriculum. Although originally intended for junior high students, it can be readily adapted for both older and younger ones. Author: Candace O'Keefe; illustrator: Charles Shaw.

TEXAS WOMEN: LEGENDS IN THEIR OWN TIME. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J, S, A.

A photo-illustrated book about eight contemporary Texan women as recounted to seventh graders for an oral history project. Author: Dee Seligman.

THOSE BURIED TEXANS: NO STONE UNTURNED. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. J, S, A.

A valuable reference work, the book supplies the names and burial sites of nearly two thousand noted and notorious Texans, from politicians to sports figures, the famous to the infamous. Each listing provides the dates of birth and death as well as a brief biographical sketch. Author: Tom Allen.

TODAY IN THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS. Texian Press. \$14.95. J, S, A.

Events covering the period from 1835 to annexation in 1846 are vividly described with



"news reports" and quotations from original sources. Author: Hal Kopel.

TRACKS ON THE LAND: STORIES OF IMMIGRANTS, OUTLAWS, ARTISTS, AND OTHER TEXANS WHO LEFT THEIR MARK ON THE LONE STAR STATE. Texas State Historical Association. (Out of print.) J, S.

A compilation of student-written articles from the *Junior Historian/Texas Historian*, 1940 to 1983. Most of the award-winning articles are on local history topics. The introduction helps teachers and students to relate local history to the broader topics of state and national history. The work should help motivate students to research and write the history of their own areas. Editors: David C. De Boe and Ken B. Ragsdale.

TRAILS TO TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. J, S.

Some of today's teachers will remember this newly returned book from their own schooldays. It explains the development, settlement, and economic expansion of the state. Student activities supplement each of the nine chapters. Authors: Curtis Bishop, Grace Bishop, and Clyde Inez Martin.

TREASURE, PEOPLE, SHIPS AND DREAMS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. I, J.

In 1554 three Spanish ships sank off Padre Island on the coast of Texas. The story of the disaster, then the finding and restoration of the ships makes an exciting, true story for students. The information is also available on a filmstrip with accompanying audiocassette. Author: John Davis.

TREES OF EAST TEXAS. University of Texas Press. \$14.95. J, S, A.

A compact and generously illustrated field guide of the plantlife of East Texas. Each listing provides common and technical names. Author: Robert A. Vines.

TREES OF NORTH TEXAS. University of Texas Press. \$12.95. ML.

Identifies all of the native and naturalized trees of the North Texas area. Each listing provides common and technical names. Author: Robert A. Vines.

TWENTY TEXANS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. I, J.

These short biographies of twenty Texans illustrate the ethnic and occupational diversity in the state. Subjects range from Lorenzo de Zavala and Charles Goodnight, to Ferdinand Lindheimer and Barbara Jordan, with many others along the way. Author: Betsy Warren.

TRUE TEXAS TALES??? Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95; Teacher's Guide \$3.95. J, S.

The adventures of a teenager who spends his summers on a West Texas ranch provide the springboard for the stories. Students try to identify the veracity or inventiveness of the tales, and along the way learn about the climate, geology, and unique wildlife of the region. Author: William F. Brown.



UNSUNG HEROES OF TEXAS. Gulf Publishing Co. \$9.95. J, S.

Stories of more than fifty valiant but relatively unknown Texans and their contributions to the state. Author: Ann Ruff. Free teacher's guide available with order for book.

WE CAN FLY: STORIES OF KATHERINE STINSON AND OTHER GUTSY TEXAS WOMEN. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. J, S, A.

*We Can Fly* is an outgrowth of the two-year touring exhibition, "Texas Women: A Celebration of History." The book celebrates the lives of twelve women. It also includes stories about two groups of outstanding women of achievement: the Women's Air Service Pilots of World War II and America's first women astronauts. Authors: Mary Beth Rogers, Sherry A. Smith, and Janelle D. Scott.

WHEN I WAS JUST YOUR AGE. University of North Texas Press. \$14.95. I, J, S.

A series of reflections by thirteen men and women chronicling their youth in Texas and the Southwest in the early years of this century. Activities at the end of the book show students how to set about collecting such tales about older people—or themselves.

WHO ARE THE CHINESE TEXANS? Institute of Texan Cultures. \$8.95; \$5.95 paper. I, J.

A chronological history of the Chinese and their contributions to Texas, from the 1870 Chinese railroad workers to the present. The work is in question-and-answer format, and beautifully illustrated with drawings and photographs. Authors: Marian L. Martinello and William T. Field Jr.

WHY STOP? A GUIDE TO TEXAS HISTORICAL ROADSIDE MARKERS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$16.95. I, J, S, A.

The book includes the text of almost three thousand historical markers along Texas highways. Editors: Claude and Betty Dooley.

WILDERNESS WALKERS: NATURALISTS IN EARLY TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Brief biographies of twelve naturalists who explored Texas in the early years of the nineteenth century. The margins feature drawings of the plants and animals they recorded. The book has a bibliography, time line, and identifies the locations of each collection. Author: Betsy Warren.

WILDFLOWERS OF TEXAS. Shearer Publishing. \$12.95. J, S, A.

Specimens of wildflowers are identified and divided into sections according to color. Illustrated glossary. Author: Geyata Ajilvsgi.

WOMEN AND TEXAS HISTORY. Texas State Historical Association. \$14.95. A.

A series of essays about women and the many roles they have played in the history of the



state attests to the growing importance of women's studies as a means of enriching our overall understanding of the past. Editors: Fane Downs and Nancy Baker Jones.

**WOMEN IN EARLY TEXAS.** Texas State Historical Association. \$19.95. S, A.

A twenty-year-old book, revitalized with an introduction by historian Debbie Cottrell, profiles fifty notable Texas women who changed the course of the state's history. The women represent a broad variety of ethnic groups and social classes. Editor: Evelyn M. Carrington.

**WOMEN IN TEXAS: THEIR LIVES, THEIR EXPERIENCES, THEIR ACCOMPLISHMENTS.** State House Press. \$24.95; \$16.95 paper. S, A.

Beginning with a "Mother of Texas" and ending with a First Lady, *Women in Texas* surveys the lives of thirty significant Texans, arranged chronologically and selected with an aim toward geographic, ethnic, and vocational representation. A study guide with numerous questions and answers is available in paperback for \$6.95. Authors: Ann Fears Crawford and Crystal Sasse Ragsdale.

**WORDING YOUR WAY THROUGH TEXAS.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. (Out of print.) J, S, A.

This is a serious look at word origins for persons, places, and periods in Texas history. The author, a longtime Dallas school official, examines Texas names—their colorful origins, and their ethnic and religious sources—and explores the meanings and folklore behind many of them. Author: Herman F. Benthul.

**THE XIT RANCH OF TEXAS AND THE EARLY DAYS OF THE LLANO ESTACADO.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$ 12.95. S, A.

When it was fenced in 1880 the XIT Ranch was probably the largest fenced range in the world. This account of the free-range days is a revised version of the 1929 publication. Author: J. Everts Haley.



# NOTES



## Spanish Language Materials



*Some written and audiovisual materials are available in Spanish. Generally these are also to be found in English, or in the case of audiocassettes, in both languages. The following list is an introduction to Texas history materials in Spanish.*

¡ADELANTE MUJERES! National Women's History Project. 30 minutes. \$49.95. S, A.

A comprehensive study guide accompanies this video that details the story of Mexican American/Chicana women from the time of the Spanish arrival in the Western Hemisphere to the present. Major events and personalities are depicted in an upbeat story illustrated with archival and private-collection photographs. Available in English and Spanish.

ART AMONG US/ARTE ENTRE NOSTROS: MEXICAN AMERICAN FOLK ART IN TEXAS. Texas Folklife Resources. \$15.00. I, J, S, A.

A descriptive, illustrated catalogue in English and Spanish that describes the full spectrum of folk art among Mexican Americans in San Antonio.

BIOGRAPHIES in Hispanic Stories Series. Steck-Vaughn Co. \$223.68 for entire series; \$13.98 per volume. I, J.

This sixteen-part series provides half of each page in Spanish, the other half in English. The subjects are well-known historical figures of the Spanish-speaking world, primarily in the Western Hemisphere. All are excellent role models.

CESAR CHAVEZ Y LA CAUSA. Children's Press. \$11.93; \$2.95 paper. I, J.

The story of Cesar Chavez and his efforts to better life for agricultural workers is written by Naurice Roberts and translated into Spanish by Roberto Franco.

HANK EL PERRO VAQUERO. Gulf Publishing Co. \$6.95 each. P, I.

The first six of John Erickson's humorous HANK THE COWDOG Series are now available in Spanish. Each volume features further adventures and misadventures of the



so-called Head of Ranch Security. Titles in Spanish include: *Las Verdaderas Aventuras de Hank El Perro Vaquero*; *Las Nuevas Aventuras*; *Es Una Vida de Perros*; *Amor Perdido*; and *Deja Que Los Perros Dormidos Descansen*.

HENRY CISNEROS: ALCALDE MEXICO-AMERICANO. Children's Press. \$11.93; \$2.95 paper. I, J.

Naurice Roberts's illustrated biography of the mayor of San Antonio has been translated by Roberto Franco.

HISPANICS OF ACHIEVEMENT. Chelsea House. Early 1990s. I, J.

This is a series, in English, of men and women of Hispanic heritage who have achieved fame and respect in several fields of endeavor.

MEXICAN AMERICAN/CHICANA WOMEN. National Women's History Project. Bilingual photo display. \$12.00. ML.

Twenty black-and-white photographs, of both renowned individuals and ordinary women in their everyday lives, are accompanied by a biographical account of each person in both English and Spanish.

I'M GOING TO TEXAS: *YO VOY A TEJAS*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; \$4.95 paper. P, I.

Students will enjoy this illustrated, rhyming account of a child's excitement at visiting Texas; in both Spanish and English.

LAS MUJERES: MEXICAN AMERICAN/CHICANA WOMEN. National Women's History Project. \$8.50. J, S, A.

The forty-page booklet has full-page photographs and half-page biographies in English and Spanish recounting the stories of seventeen women from the eighteenth century to the present.

ROSITA'S CHRISTMAS WISH. TexArt Services. P, I.

Mary Ann Smothers Bruni tells a delightful tale, which is colorfully illustrated by Thom Ricks.

TEJAS, SU MEJOR COMPRA EN VACACIONES. Texas Department of Transportation. Free. ML.

Illustrated promotional booklet on Texas developed for tourists.

TEXAS EN PALABRAS Y FOTOS. Children's Press. \$9.95. I.

Dennis B. Fradin's book provides plentiful information on the history and geography of Texas, and is illustrated with maps and color photographs.



## *Materials for Students with Special Needs*



*Printed and audiovisual materials are readily available for students throughout Texas who have vision or hearing difficulties, or learning disabilities that restrict the use of standard materials. There are also materials produced especially for children in accelerated programs.*

Well over a hundred popular children's books published by Eakin Publications are available on three disks for The Accelerated Reader, a computerized reading enrichment program for third grade through high school. Knowledge and comprehension are tested in a series of multiple-choice questions. Eakin Publications is referenced in the Distributors section.

Captioned films and videos for hearing-impaired students are available at no charge from two depositories in Texas. Information on this service may be obtained from Captioned Film/Video Program (referenced in the Distributors section).

North Texas Taping and Radio for the Blind has several hundred books on tape for use by visually impaired, dyslexic, and at-risk students. Turnaround time for orders is approximately two weeks. Prices are \$5.00 for cassette text books, and \$3.00 for literature cassettes, with a \$3.00 handling fee for every 25 cassettes shipped. Further information is available from North Texas Taping and Radio for the Blind (referenced in Distributors section).

*Texas Lore*, a series produced by Red Rose Studio, is appropriate for students from Grade three or four through high school. The twelve short volumes by Patrick M. Reynolds present the history of Texas in comic-book format. Drawn from a cartoon feature launched in the *Houston Post* in 1982, the historical information is presented in a highly readable way. The series is ideal for students who have difficulty learning to read. Volumes 1 through 4 have been reprinted in a single paperbound volume. The most recent additions, Volumes 11 and 12 come combined, and focus on Spanish settlement. The prices are as follows: Vols. 1-4 combined, \$12.95; Vols. 11-12 combined, \$6.95; single volumes \$3.95 each; entire set \$45.90. Red Rose Studio is referenced in the Distributors section.

At the Texas State Library in Austin, a Children's Literary Specialist coordinates services that include providing for groups of disabled children. An annual summer reading specialist is also



provided. The library purchases large-print and picture books, as well as books with tactile features such as scratch-and-sniff. Children's books and juvenile magazines are available, as well as materials in Spanish. A catalog may be requested. Many other publications are on file as well, providing information on resources and services for preschoolers, schoolchildren, and older students making the transition to working life. Information on participating Texas libraries is also available. For further information on publications and services, call 1-800-252-9605, or in Austin, Texas, call 463-5458.

The Texas State Library Talking Book Program provides reading materials in special formats—cassette, record, braille, and large-print—to Texas residents who cannot read conventional printed matter because of visual or physical limitations. Equipment necessary to play the recorded books is also available on loan. The materials, sent by mail, are free of charge.

Texas Video Library, available through Hendrick-Long Publishing Co., is a series of ten closed-caption video programs suitable for students in fourth grade or above. Details of the programs' contents are supplied in the Video section. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. is referenced in the Distributors section.



*Journals, Periodicals, Yearbooks, Encyclopedias, and Newspapers  
Containing Material Relevant to Teaching Texas History*



EAST TEXAS HISTORICAL JOURNAL. East Texas Historical Association. \$15.00. A.

A compilation of scholarly articles on East Texas history. The *Journal* also has a book review section. Biannual.

HERITAGE. Texas Historical Foundation. Free to members. A.

Most articles pertain to Texas's heritage and culture, with an emphasis on preservation activities. The publication also contains a number of "how-to" articles and a book review section. Quarterly.

HISTORICAL PRESERVATION AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL BULLETINS AND BOOKLETS. Texas Historical Commission. Most items are inexpensive or free. A.

A current list of publications on preserving historical buildings and on archaeological sites in Texas is available.

HOUSTON REVIEW: HISTORY AND CULTURE OF THE GULF COAST. Houston Metropolitan Research Center of the Houston Public Library. \$2.50 per copy or \$7.50 per year. A.

Scholarly articles about the history and culture of Houston and the Gulf Coast. Published three times a year.

INSIGHT. Texas State Historical Association. Free to teachers who attend the Association's History Awareness Workshop. A.

A newsletter for elementary and secondary social studies teachers published by the Educational Services Division of the TSHA. Each issue contains a "how-to-do-it" section highlighting a topic, technique, or facet of community studies, along with some suggested classroom activities. Three issues during the school year.



**JOURNAL OF BIG BEND STUDIES.** The Center for Big Bend Studies at Sul Ross State University. \$15.00. A.

Dedicated to topics related to the history and culture of the southwestern United States and northern Mexico, with emphasis on the Big Bend region of Texas. Annual.

**JOURNAL OF TEXAS CATHOLIC HISTORY AND CULTURE.** The Texas Catholic Historical Society. \$6.00. A.

Contains articles about Texas Catholic history and culture. Most of the articles were presented at the Society's annual meeting. Includes a book review section. Annual.

**THE MEDALLION.** Texas Historical Commission. \$7.00. A.

Bi-monthly newsletter. A general compilation of historical preservation news with special features on archaeology, restoration, museums, current historical events, environmental control, and beautification.

**MILITARY HISTORY OF THE WEST.** University of North Texas Press. \$8.00. A.

Founded in 1961 the journal has been variously titled: *Texas Military History* (1961-70); *Military History of Texas and the Southwest* (1971-88); *Military History of the Southwest* (1989-92); and *Military History of the West* (1993-). Each issue includes three to five articles, fifteen to twenty book reviews, and ten to twenty book notes. Two issues per year.

**THE NEW HANDBOOK OF TEXAS.** Texas State Historical Association. \$395.00. ML.

A six-volume set that contains 24,000 articles covering the history, agriculture, architecture, art, business, education, environment, folklore, geology, health and medicine, law, politics, religion, sports, and urbanization of Texas. Undoubtedly the most comprehensive and authoritative source on Texas studies.

**PANHANDLE-PLAINS HISTORICAL REVIEW.** Panhandle-Plains Historical Association. Free to members of the Association. A.

A compilation of scholarly articles on Panhandle-Plains history. Annual.

**THE ROADRUNNER.** Texas State Historical Association. No Charge. A.

The Junior Historian newsletter; contains information about upcoming Junior Historian activities, including the annual meetings. In addition there is information about upcoming conferences, recent publications, and other materials of interest to Texas history teachers. The publication is distributed free to sponsors and appears three times a year: January, March, and October.

**SOUTH TEXAS STUDIES.** The Victoria College Press. \$6.50 per year. A.

Publication of papers presented at the South Texas symposium held at Victoria College. Book reviews. Annual.

SOUTHWESTERN HISTORICAL QUARTERLY. Texas State Historical Association. \$35.00 per year; \$10.00 single issue. A.

A collection of scholarly articles on Texas history. The book review section is a valuable guide for teachers and librarians in selecting books on Texas history. Quarterly.

SOUTHWEST REVIEW. \$20.00 per year. A.

Began in 1915 as the *Texas Review* at the University of Texas, it is now issued quarterly by Southern Methodist University. Although primarily a literary magazine, the *Review* also contains articles of historical interest. Quarterly.

TEXAS ALMANAC AND STATE INDUSTRIAL GUIDE. The Dallas *Morning News*. \$17.95; \$12.95 paper. J, S, A.

Resources, industries, commerce, history, government, population, and other subjects relating to the political, civic, and economic development of Texas are found in the *Almanac*. Special Texas history features in the new edition include a Texas history time line, the history of the women's movement in Texas, the West Texas mission of Santa Cruz de San Sabá, and Texas music. Ethnic diversity is highlighted and a full state profile provided. A teacher's guide with activities is available for \$7.95. Biennial.

TEXAS BAPTIST HISTORY: THE JOURNAL OF THE TEXAS BAPTIST HISTORICAL SOCIETY. Texas Baptist Historical Society. \$10.00. A.

Most of the articles published in the journal are papers read at the Society's annual meeting, which is held in conjunction with the Texas State Historical Association's annual meeting in the spring. Book reviews. Annual.

TEXAS FOLKLORE SOCIETY PUBLICATIONS. University of North Texas Press. Prices range from \$4.95 to \$10.00 for paperback editions. S, A.

These forty-odd volumes contain papers read at Society meetings, and other articles both volunteered and solicited. Some topics dealt with in past issues are home remedies for man and beast, cowboy songs, Negro songs and tales, games, oilfield lore, diction used in various occupations, tales of the border Mexicans, German customs, and women in Texas.

TEXAS HIGHWAYS. \$2.00 per issue or \$12.00 annually. J, S, A.

Published monthly to promote energy conservation through more efficient recreational-travel planning, and to inform readers about public parks, recreational opportunities, scenic places, historic accounts, and other subjects concerning Texas.

TEXAS HISTORIAN. Texas State Historical Association. \$7.00 per year. *Junior Historian* subscription is \$6.00 per year. ML.

A collection of historical articles by Texas's outstanding student historians on a wide range of Texas subjects. Excellent illustrations. Four issues during the school year.

THE TEXAS HUMANIST: IDEAS, HISTORY, AND CULTURE. Texas Committee for the Humanities. Free; \$2.50 for back issues. A.

The Committee's official publication, which is published three times a year. Publishes articles on the following topics: 1) Texas history and culture; 2) the humanities and public issues; 3) the disciplines and resources of the humanities; and 4) documentation and interpretation of art and cultural life in Texas.

TEXAS LEGISLATIVE HANDBOOK. Texas State Directory Press. \$4.95 (plus shipping and handling). ML.

Available in pocket form, the *Handbook* contains photographs of each member of the legislature; Capitol office locations and phone numbers for each member; member districts and party affiliation; Senate and House seating charts; staff members, offices, and phone numbers for the governor, lieutenant governor, and speaker of the House; a listing of important Capitol phone numbers and services; locations and phone numbers for key state agencies in the Capitol complex; and a map.

TEXAS PARKS AND WILDLIFE. Texas Parks and Wildlife Department. \$1.00 monthly or \$8.00 for a one-year subscription. ML.

Although most articles are on hunting and/or wildlife, there are some of an historic nature. Published monthly by the Texas Parks and Wildlife Department.

TEXAS STATE DIRECTORY: THE COMPREHENSIVE GUIDE TO THE DECISION MAKERS IN TEXAS GOVERNMENT. Texas State Directory Press. \$26.95 (plus shipping and handling). ML.

This important reference tool features updated information on "who does what, and how to reach them" in the governor's office, the legislature, state agencies, boards and commissions, the judiciary, and county and city governments.

TOUCHSTONE. Texas State Historical Association. \$8.00. A.

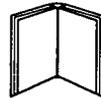
Award-winning articles about Texas written by college students who are members of the Association's Walter Prescott Webb Historical Society. Also includes articles on pedagogy and a section on museums, written by museum educators. Annual.

WEST TEXAS HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION YEARBOOK. West Texas Historical Association. Free to members of the Association. A.

Scholarly articles on a wide range of West Texas historical subjects. The journal also has a book review section.



*Professional Publications Focusing on Methodology and  
Techniques of Teaching History and Social Studies*



THE AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR STATE AND LOCAL HISTORY PUBLICATIONS. American Association for State and Local History. \$3.00 per leaflet. A.

The Association publishes a number of brief, "how-to-do-it" technical leaflets of interest to teachers. Several series of interest to Texas history teachers include those on research, media, local history projects, genealogy, and preservation. A current publication list is available on request.

THE AMERICAN INDIAN SOCIAL STUDIES CURRICULUM ACTIVITY GUIDE, GRADES 7-8. ERIC Document Reproduction Service. \$19.85. When ordering you must include the number ED 230 315. J.

Twelve cultural guides provide information on American Indians for teachers to use as supplementary materials to social studies texts. Each is accompanied by a teacher's guide offering activities or discussion/quiz questions. Topics encompass stereotypes of American Indians, origins of the people, culture areas in geography, culture area maps and overviews, tribes, government, subsistence, language, philosophy, oral literature, art, and the present. Also includes a list of seventy Indian-subject films that have been approved by various Indian-Education Parent Committees.

THE AMERICAN INDIAN SOCIAL STUDIES CURRICULUM ACTIVITY GUIDE, GRADES 9-12. ERIC Document Reproduction Service. \$15.88. When ordering you must include the number ED 230 317. S.

Designed to provide supplementary information on American Indians for the teaching of American history, this guide offers background knowledge and suggested discussion topics for students. Contents of the guide include: a historical time line outlining major events from 15,000 B.C. to the present; Hollywood's influence on Indian stereotypes; generalities concerning culture areas; descriptions of each culture area; information on the Bering Land-Bridge Theory; and Columbus's role in discovering America. Appendices provide classroom activities, a list of ten recommended historical films, and a map indicating the nine culture areas.

**BIG BOOK OF BOOKS AND ACTIVITIES.** Dinah-Might Activities. \$19.95. A.

Illustrates how to make hundreds of manipulatives and teaching aids using inexpensive materials found in the classroom or at home. With over four hundred black-and-white photographs and illustrations, this guide takes you through the steps for making each student/teacher project that will help convert your classroom into a student-oriented learning environment.

**CHILDREN'S LITERATURE & SOCIAL STUDIES: SELECTING AND USING NOTABLE BOOKS IN THE CLASSROOM.** National Council for the Social Studies. \$14.95. A.

Compiled from the list of Notable Children's Trade Books and designed primarily for elementary and middle school social studies teachers, this two-part publication examines the process of selecting books for classroom instruction, and demonstrates how to incorporate literature into the social studies program. This is a timeless collection of articles by authors who discuss topics such as nonfiction read-aloud programs, biographies, using literature folders, notable picture-books, children's literature and geography, and the treatment of war and conflict in young adult literature.

**CLASSROOM ORGANIZATION: IT CAN BE DONE.** Dinah-Might Activities. \$14.95. A.

A comprehensive guide to help teachers creatively manage their time, energy, and materials in the classroom. This book, the first in a series, helps teachers deal with the endless problems of student supplies (pencils, glue, crayons, etc.), keeping the classroom neat and organized, displaying student work and objects brought for sharing, preparing bulletin boards, and storing materials.

**COMMUNITY STUDY: APPLICATIONS AND OPPORTUNITIES.** National Council for the Social Studies. \$7.95. A.

Bulletin No. 73. Includes the following chapter titles: "Young People and the Community"; "Using the Local Community to Teach About the Global Community"; "Approaches for Teaching Community Economics"; "State History and Community Study"; "Using the Visual Arts to Interpret the Community"; "Citizenship Grounded in Community"; and "Developing Values Through Community Service."

**CURRICULUM GUIDELINES FOR MULTICULTURAL EDUCATION.** National Council for the Social Studies. \$4.00. A.

Provides indispensable guidelines for achieving school, college, and university programs and curricula that reflect the racial, ethnic, and cultural diversity within the United States and the world. The guidelines have been revised considerably since their original issuance in 1976. They consist of three parts: A Rationale for Ethnic Pluralism and Multicultural Education; Curriculum Guidelines for Multicultural Education; and the Multicultural Education Program Evaluation Checklist.

**ELEMENTARY SCHOOL SOCIAL STUDIES: RESEARCH AS A GUIDE TO PRACTICE.** National Council for Social Studies. \$9.95. A.

Provides a sound rationale for planned and consistent attention to social studies at the elementary level. The resource also makes accessible current and valid data on how and when children develop concepts, skills, and attitudes associated with social studies.

**ENHANCING SOCIAL STUDIES THROUGH LITERARY STRATEGIES.** National Council for Social Studies. \$14.95. A.

A publication written for social studies teachers who want to help students improve their literacy abilities by offering them stimulating social studies materials. Chapters focus on enhancing writing, speaking, and listening skills, and on building conceptual and vocabulary knowledge in the social studies. The book also provides practical step-by-step procedures and literacy-based strategies for developing critical-thinking skills.

**GENEALOGICAL RESOURCES AT THE TEXAS STATE LIBRARY.** Texas State Library. Free. ML.

This guide lists basic genealogical reference books and record sources, explains the census format at different periods, describes land titles, and provides the addresses and availability of holdings elsewhere. It also offers concrete suggestions on sources to investigate, and checklists useful in actually undertaking family research.

**A GRAVEYARD PRESENTATION PRIMER.** American Association for State and Local History. \$15.95. A.

This basic primer explains in a step-by-step fashion how to preserve a graveyard. In-depth coverage of stone conservation is included, with recommendations on what lay people should and should not attempt. Numerous photographs and diagrams illustrate the preservation process. Author: Lynette Strangstad.

**HISTORY BY DESIGN: A PRIMER ON INTERPRETING AND EXHIBITING COMMUNITY HISTORY.** Texas Association of Museums. \$8.00. ML.

A guide to help historians, museum personnel, teachers, and community volunteers analyze community history and develop exhibits. The book examines: researching sources, interpreting artifacts, identifying audiences, developing concepts, and the design and lighting of exhibits. The work also contains a list of Texas libraries and archival collections, and a list of published reference sources on exhibit research and preparation.

**HISTORY MATTERS!** National Council for History Education, Inc. Free to members. A.

The newsletter of the National Council for History Education, an organization dedicated to promoting the importance of history in school and society. Each issue contains an essay on a topic of interest to history educators. The NCHE sponsors workshops and symposia for history teachers. The newsletter comes out ten times a year.



**HISTORY NEWS.** American Association for State and Local History. \$4.00 per issue or free with membership in the Association. A.

The journal of the American Association of State and Local History. Articles of interest to those in museum work and those interested in local history. Many articles are of a practical "how-to" nature. Published bi-monthly.

**THE HISTORY TEACHER.** Society for History Education \$22.00 for one year. This price also includes two newsletters. A.

The Society's quarterly publication, in which articles of three general types appear: 1) reports on promising new classroom techniques, educational programs, curricula, and methods of evaluating instructional effectiveness; 2) analyses of important interpretations, leading historians, historiographical problems, and recent trends in specific fields of historical research; and 3) critical review-essays on audiovisual materials, textbooks, and other secondary works suitable for classroom use.

**HOUSES AND HOMES.** American Association for State and Local History. \$14.95. A.

Researching the history of a home can be a rewarding experience. It provides insight into the previous occupants' lives and gives clues to questions about the house's construction and changes made over the years. The research can also reveal new information about the surrounding community: architectural styles, housing patterns, and economic growth and development. In the AASLH Nearby History Series.

**IDENTIFYING AMERICAN ARCHITECTURE: A PICTORIAL GUIDE TO STYLES AND TERMS, 1600-1945.** American Association for State and Local History. \$11.95. A.

A pictorial guide that visually identifies architectural styles and terms in more than two hundred photographs. Predominant characteristics of thirty-nine styles are shown, from Spanish Colonial through Art Moderne. Brief text describes each, photos are keyed by number to an explanatory list of a style's salient features. Pictorial glossary pinpoints details with close-ups. Compact enough for pocket or purse—superb for walking tours. Author: John J. G. Blumenson.

**INFORMATION ON STARTING A MUSEUM.** Texas Association of Museums. \$20.00. A.

Includes a technical assistance packet and *Starting Right: A Basic Guide to Museum Planning*. Authors: Gerald George and Cindy Sherell-Leo.

**JUNIOR HISTORIAN AND WALTER PRESCOTT WEBB HISTORICAL SOCIETY SPONSORS' HANDBOOK: A GUIDE TO LOCAL HISTORY STUDIES IN THE SCHOOL AND COMMUNITY.** Texas State Historical Association. No Charge to Junior Historian sponsors and co-sponsors; \$10.00 to other teachers. A.

This guide for Junior Historian sponsors includes practical classroom activities to enliven Texas history teaching. Although designed for the secondary school teacher, many

activities are also applicable to the elementary grades. Topics include: "Guide to organizing a History Fair"; "Guide to Organizing a Temporary Museum-Artifact Show"; "Student's Guide to Historical Research and Writing"; "Historical Exhibits Contest Guidelines"; and "Bibliographic Guide to Community Studies." Editor: David De Boe.

**LOCAL BUSINESSES.** American Association for State and Local History. \$14.95. A.

This guide to the investigation of business history addresses major issues in a thoughtful fashion. Anyone contemplating a historical inquiry, whether as a sponsor, investigator, supporter, evaluator, or simply a user, will receive useful information by which to judge the merits of such an undertaking. In the AASLH Nearby History Series.

**LOCAL SCHOOLS.** American Association for State and Local History. \$14.95. A.

Guides readers through questions to ask about educational experiences in their communities and the places to look for answers. Also presented are the critical roles played by libraries, literary and debating societies, Sunday schools, and women's clubs. In the AASLH Nearby History Series. Author: Ronald E. Butchart.

**MAGAZINE OF HISTORY.** Organization of American Historians. \$20.00 per year. A.

Founded in 1985, the magazine is devoted to the professional development of history/social studies teachers. Issued four times a year by the Organization of American Historians, it provides articles and features by and for precollegiate and community college teachers that will help keep them abreast of new areas of historical scholarship and new interpretations of important historical issues. Each issue also provides lesson plans by teachers on important historical problems, themes, or eras. Also included is news of professional meetings, columns on current issues in the teaching of history, student viewpoints, and information on classroom media and educational resources.

**NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR THE SOCIAL STUDIES PUBLICATIONS.** National Council for the Social Studies. Price list available on request. A.

The National Council for the Social Studies publishes a number of works of interest and concern to professionals in the various disciplines of the social studies. The publications are designed to assist teachers in selecting works most suitable to their professional needs and interests. Educators will find a variety of subjects covered, and an array of specific materials designed to assist the classroom teacher and to foster the growth of citizenship education.

**NATIONAL TRUST FOR HISTORIC PRESERVATION BOOKLETS.** National Trust for Historic Preservation. \$6.00 per booklet. A.

The National Trust for Historic Preservation publishes a number of booklets that provide concise information on preservation topics and issues. Several of the booklets would be of interest to history teachers at the elementary and secondary level.

NEARBY HISTORY: EXPLORING THE PAST AROUND YOU. American Association for State and Local History. \$18.95. A.

A work designed for those interested in studying the immediate environment. The authors address such areas of research as families, buildings, neighborhoods, institutions, and communities, raising a number of questions about each to guide thinking and research. Other sections of the book deal with the use of various kinds of evidence, writing and preserving what one finds, and academic work in family and community history. The seven appendices cover such things as how to request information from federal agencies, a sample nomination form for the National Register of Historic Places, a sample procedure and form for historic-site surveys, a sample local ordinance for the preservation of buildings, and addresses of regional branches of the National Archives. In the AASLH Nearby History Series. Authors: David E. Kyvig and Myron A. Marty.

ORAL HISTORY: A GUIDE FOR TEACHERS (AND OTHERS). University of Texas Press. \$11.95 paper. A.

*Oral History* is designed to introduce teachers, students, and interested individuals to the techniques, problems, and pleasures of collecting oral history. The authors, themselves experienced educators, examine the uses of oral history in the classroom, looking at a wide range of projects that have been attempted, and focusing on those that have succeeded best. In addition to suggesting many possible projects, they discuss the necessary hardware and its use: recording equipment and procedures, interview outlines and preliminary research, photography and note-taking in the field, transcription and storage of information, legal forms, and more. For the teacher, the authors offer helpful advice on training students to be sensitive interviewers in both formal and informal situations. Authors: Thad Sitton, George L. Mehaffy, and O. L. Davis Jr.

ORAL HISTORY FOR THE LOCAL HISTORICAL SOCIETY. American Association for State and Local History. \$12.95. A.

This book tells how to start an oral history program, how to select the right equipment, and how to interview those who made history or observed it. The work also discusses how to transcribe, index, store, and preserve oral history tapes. Author: Willa K. Baum.

ORAL HISTORY FOR TEXANS. Texas Historical Commission. Free. A.

An introduction to oral history, from its origins in our society to specific interviewing techniques. The booklet's six chapters explore the following topics: "Why Oral History?—General Considerations"; "Why Oral History in Texas?"; "The Oral History Method—Interview Principles in Local History"; "The Oral History Project: Practical Advice for Texans"; "Suggested Topics for Oral History in Texas—The Community's Collective Memory"; and "Recording Oral History—Sound Advice, or Advice on Sound?" Valuable appendices provide a listing of oral history centers in Texas, funding information, sample interview-agreement forms, and footnote and bibliography styles for oral interviews. Author: Tom Charlton.

THE PAST MEETS THE PRESENT: ESSAYS ON ORAL HISTORY. University Press of America. \$23.50; \$11.50 paper; plus shipping charge.

A useful addition to the literature on carrying out oral history projects.

PLACES OF WORSHIP. American Association for State and Local History. \$16.95. A.

Using illustrations from diverse organizations, the author points out questions to be asked when exploring individual histories and suggests ways in which answers may be found. Two appendices provide a guide to published works on American religion and a directory of denominational archives and historical agencies. In the AASLH Nearby History Series.

PUBLIC PLACES. American Association for State and Local History. \$16.95. A.

Explore the ways in which monuments, public buildings, town plans, streets, and open spaces have shaped a community. Readers will consider a wide range of topics gathered from studies in history, architecture, urban planning, geography, and sociology. In the AASLH Nearby History Series.

RECORD AND REMEMBER: TRACING YOUR ROOTS THROUGH ORAL HISTORY. Madison Books. \$10.95. A.

A step-by-step guide that teaches hands-on skills such as researching background information, conducting interviews, and using audiovisual equipment. Authors: Jane Lewit and Ellen Epstein.

SAN JACINTO BATTLEGROUND STATE HISTORICAL PARK: A TEACHER'S CURRICULUM GUIDE. San Jacinto Museum of History Association. \$10.75; \$3.00 for shipping and handling. A.

This 150-page guide includes sections on objectives, essential elements, pre-test/post-test, pre-visit activities, biographical activities, historical activities, museum activities, battleground activities, battleground maps, reference listing, and the battleship *Texas*.

A SHARED PAST. Texas State Historical Association. \$10.00. A.

A collection of materials to help American history teachers integrate Texas history into their U.S. history courses. The volume covers the period from Reconstruction to the present day. The lessons are flexible, suitable for a wide range of teachers and students. Author: William C. Hardt.

SOCIAL EDUCATION. National Council for the Social Studies. \$3.50 to \$7.50 per issue; free with membership in the Council. A.

Official journal of the Council. Published seven times a year in October, November/December, January, February, March, April, and May.



**SOCIAL STUDIES AND THE YOUNG LEARNER.** National Council for the Social Studies. \$30.00; \$20.00 for NCSS members. A.

Meets teachers' needs for new information and effective teaching activities. Devoted solely to elementary social studies, this quarterly publication provides teaching techniques designed to stimulate student reading, writing, and critical-thinking skills vital to classroom success. Published four times a year.

**SOCIAL STUDIES IN REAL LIFE: USING THE DALLAS MORNING NEWS IN THE MIDDLE SCHOOL CURRICULUM.** Dallas *Morning News*. No charge. J.

Suggests ways a social studies teacher may use the newspaper to enhance the teaching of basic skills and objectives. The sixteen suggested activities are designed to reinforce the teacher's lesson plans in the areas of geography, economics, government, and history.

**THE SOCIAL STUDIES TEXAN.** Texas Council for the Social Studies. \$3.00 per copy; free with membership. A.

The official publication of the Council. The journal includes professional articles relating to social studies education, and lesson plans and activities that have been used successfully in the Texas classroom. It also contains information about opportunities for professional growth and the latest materials available for use in the classroom. Published three times a year.

**TEACHER'S GUIDE TO THE INSTITUTE OF TEXAN CULTURES.** Institute of Texan Cultures. \$2.95. ML.

This booklet includes study-unit outlines, classroom activities, and discussion starters to help teachers incorporate the study of family heritage, ethnic cultures, and pioneer life within the existing curriculum. The book is especially helpful to teachers planning a field trip to the Institute, as it includes many pre- and post-visit activities.

**TEACHER'S GUIDE TO THE TEXAS ALMANAC.** The Dallas *Morning News*. \$7.95. I, J, S.

A sixteen-page guide designed to facilitate the use of the *Texas Almanac* in the classroom. The guide is designed to meet the following teaching objectives: 1) to enhance students' interest in Texas, its history, geography, economics, and people; 2) to encourage students to develop their reading and critical-thinking skills; 3) to encourage students to develop their skills in reading maps, graphs, and tables; 4) to enable students to enhance their research skills by using the index to locate information; and 5) to acquaint students with the variety of information about Texas found in the *Almanac*.

**TEACHING ABOUT LOCAL GOVERNMENTS.** National Council for the Social Studies. \$1.75. A.

Designed to assist social studies educators in developing positive student attitudes and citizenship skills through first-hand experiences with the workings of democratic government at the local level. This publication provides a close-up view of how government affects students' lives.

TEACHING ABOUT NATIVE AMERICANS. National Council for the Social Studies. \$12.95. A.

What should social studies teachers teach about Native Americans? This publication provides elementary and secondary teachers direct and practical support in the form of fifteen lesson plans and extensive resources. It also includes information for the general public about the significance of the indigenous peoples of our nation.

TEACHING ABOUT WOMEN IN THE SOCIAL STUDIES: CONCEPTS, METHODS, AND MATERIALS. National Council for the Social Studies. \$8.35. A.

A valuable resource book presenting basic concepts to help teachers analyze and revise their social studies offerings and build new instructional units and courses. Reference materials pertinent to U.S. history, world history, and other courses will aid teachers in incorporating women's studies into a variety of subject areas.

TRANSCRIBING AND EDITING ORAL HISTORY. American Association for State and Local History. \$14.95. A.

Tape-recorded oral histories add little to community history if they are not used. This book offers comprehensive, sound advice on each step in making a written record of an oral history recording. Author: Willa K. Baum.

TWENTIETH-CENTURY TEXAS: A HIGH SCHOOL TEXAS STUDIES CURRICULUM GUIDE. Texas State Historical Association. \$10.00. A.

More than thirty innovative classroom activities are brought together for teachers of Texas history courses. The first part of the curriculum guide has been developed by Bill Hardt for students in the Advanced Texas Studies course he has taught over the past fifteen years, and the second part by Jack Sheridan, a professor of education at the University of Houston, who promotes creative teaching strategies.

WHO PUT THE CANNON IN THE COURTHOUSE SQUARE?: A GUIDE TO UNCOVERING THE PAST. Walker and Co. \$11.85. I, J.

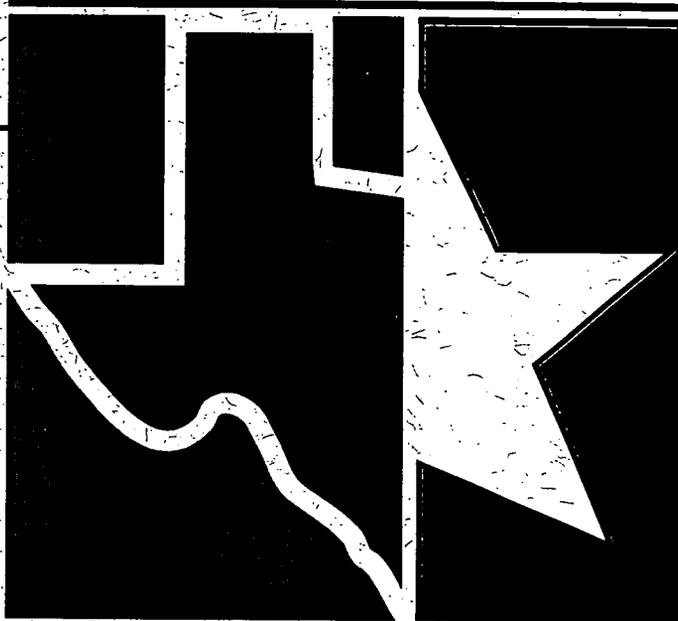
A how-to book on writing local history, designed for upper elementary and junior high students. Through activities and humorous examples, young readers can develop an appreciation of the fascinating history around them. The book shows how to use original and secondary source materials, and how to organize discoveries into memorable stories that can make important contributions to local history. Author: Kay Cooper.

WOMEN'S HISTORY CURRICULUM GUIDE. National Women's History Project. \$8.50. P, I, J, S.

Designed for elementary and secondary use, this cross-cultural guide is packed with information and suggestions to help develop classroom activities, create puppets/paper dolls, and develop research and discussion questions. Supplementary print and non-print resources are included. All of the materials can be reproduced for classroom use and are adaptable for social studies, ethnic studies, and history units. Revised annually.



# NOTES



**Juvenile Books**



## Juvenile Books



*This list of fictional books about Texas for juveniles has been drawn from several sources. All were included in the 1995 edition of Books in Print, and are thus available from either the publisher or, if indicated, a distributor. I am deeply grateful to Barbara Immroth, Ph.D., Professor of Children's Literature at the University of Texas at Austin, for the compilation of juvenile books she gathered for the 1989 edition of this guide. Well over two hundred books that were annotated then have provided the basis for our revised selection. Titles have been acquired from both national and regional publishers' catalogues, as well as a few hidden away in smaller listings, provided by teachers and others who are fascinated by children's literature and Texas history.*

*Many of the books included are available from the Hendrick-Long Publishing Company in Dallas. I would like to thank Jim Long and his gracious staff for their help in bringing together the selection presented here. The list is not exhaustive. New books are appearing every day, but we have used the Fall 1995 catalogues as our cut-off date. There are losses as well as gains. Economics dictates dropping books when they no longer pay their way, even though children continue to love them and recommend them to their friends. We urge teachers to direct students to the library shelves in their schools and their communities.*

*The books are annotated briefly, and information on their price and suggested reading level is included. As the average classroom can expect to have a four-year span in terms of maturity and educational level, the terms are in keeping with the rest of the guide, suggesting suitability for Primary (P), Upper Elementary (U), and Middle School or Junior High School readers (J).*

*All the books have an identifiable Texas focus, and almost all have an historical theme. Many are biographies which bring past heroes and heroines to life. Others are adventure stories set in the days*



*when Texas was young, and frontier life no less dangerous than the world of today. New approaches and interpretations of history have encouraged authors to heed the contribution of people from different ethnic and racial backgrounds, and especially that of girls and women in shaping the course of Texas history.*

*Fiction and Nonfiction Works about Texas for  
Juveniles*



Alexander, Frances. MOTHER GOOSE ON THE RIO GRANDE. National Textbook Co. \$6.95. P.

Mexican nursery rhymes and games, collected from young and old in the Rio Grande Valley. Spanish verses, illustrated with colorful drawings and accompanied by English translations, are an introduction to Mexican folklore for children.

Alter, Judy. AFTER PA WAS SHOT. Ellen C. Temple; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. I, J.

When her father is shot, Ellsbeth is bound to take an adult role and care for her mother and siblings, meanwhile trying to track down the killer. The story is set in Center, Texas, in the early years of this century.

Alter, Judy. KATIE AND THE RECLUSE. Ellen C. Temple. \$5.95. I, J.

When thirteen-year-old Katie confronts the issue of acceptance in a West Texas town in the 1950s readers see how their perspective on history is stretched by the change that has evolved since "back then."

Alter, Judy. MAGGIE AND A HORSE NAMED DEVILDUST. Ellen C. Temple. \$5.95 paper. I.

Life on a North Texas ranch in 1896 provides Maggie, a fourteen-year-old tomboy, with the opportunity for horse races across the prairie and travel to Indian Territory, a practice father supports and mother protests. Maggie runs away and has more adventures than she bargained for. Alter has created another strong, appealing female protagonist, a turn-of-the-century Ramona, this time for the middle-grade reader. Other books in the Maggie series: *Maggie and the Search for Devildust* and *Maggie and Devildust Ridin' High*.

Altman, Linda Jacobs and Enrique O. Sanchez. AMELIA'S ROAD. Lee & Low Books. \$14.95. I, J.

Amelia's family are migrant workers and they must follow the harvest to make a living.



But Amelia dreams of a white house with a fine, old shade tree growing in the yard, a place where she can live without ever worrying about *los caminos* again. This book tells the story of how a little girl creates a special place for herself and her family.

Baylor, Byrd. **IF YOU ARE A HUNTER OF FOSSILS**. Macmillan. \$14.95; \$3.95 paper. P, I.

A fossil hunter looking for signs of an ancient sea in the rocks of a West Texas mountain describes how the area must have looked millions of years ago.

Baylor, Byrd. **THE BEST TOWN IN THE WORLD**. Macmillan. \$14.95; \$3.95 paper. P, I, J.

A father's memories of his Texas Hill Country youth, as retold by his child, include the best country store candy, longer summer days, taller wildflowers, better cooks, and the smartest people in the world. Ronald Himler's impressionistic, full-color, full-page watercolors depict the warmth of content and happy people.

Beatty, Patricia. **BEHAVE YOURSELF, BETHANY BRANT**. William Morrow and Co., Inc. \$12.95. I, J.

Life on a West Texas ranch in 1898 before the railroad comes through is not easy for Bethany Brant, the circuit preacher's daughter. Queen Farecta tells Bethany's fortune and unusual things happen to her: she rides an elephant, competes with her tomboy cousin, and plays cards to win back the church fund. Bethany is another of Beatty's strong, independent, entertaining female characters in this well-documented, amusing story of the not-so-old West. The author's note contains information about infant and maternal death, poorly paid teachers, McGuffey readers, prefabricated houses, and the place of women in the late-nineteenth-century American West.

Benedict, Rex. **RUN FOR YOUR SWEET LIFE**. FS&G. \$14.00. I, J.

The Border Patrol, Texas Rangers, coyotes, Suitcase Charlie Jones, five Mexican children who have been separated from a party of illegal aliens, and assorted other unusual characters populate a clever, silly story. Modern fads and political and personal foibles are fair game for Benedict's offbeat, humorous jibes that will not be understood or appreciated by all readers. Black-and-white illustrations provide visual humor.

Bishop, Curtis, et al. **TRAILS TO TEXAS**. W. S. Benson and Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. J.

This book for seventh-grade readers tells how and by whom Texas was settled, how its economy developed and its diverse personality born. The emphasis is on the settlers and immigrants, the trails they followed to their new homes, and their adventures as they adapted to widely different climatic and soil conditions. Illustrated by Watt Harris Jr.

Bruni, Mary-Ann S. **ROSITA'S CHRISTMAS WISH**. Texart Services, Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. P, I, J.

The medieval play "Los Pastores" is seen through the eyes of Rosita, a nine-year-old



member of Our Lady of Guadalupe parish in San Antonio. The first performance of the play, a story of the shepherds celebrating the first Christmas, fighting devils and adoring Baby Jesus, signals the beginning of the Christmas season in the neighborhood. Dramatic, vivid watercolors illustrate the story of Hispanic Christmas customs. A glossary of Spanish terms is included.

Carnes, Ruth J. DAVID G. BURNET: FROM NEW JERSEY TO TEXAS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

When David Burnet arrived in Texas he was stricken with tuberculosis and cared for by Comanches. He practiced law and became a judge and then president of the new nation of Texas. The exciting days of the Revolution are described in detail in this well-written biography. A glossary, bibliography, an early map, and a portrait of Burnet are among the additional features.

Carter, Kathryn Turner. AT THE BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO WITH RIP CAVITT. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I.

After his father joins Sam Houston's army, eleven-year-old Ripley Morris Cavitt and other members of his family are forced to join the "Runaway Scrape" of Texas colonists fleeing from the oncoming Mexican army. Rip participates in the Battle of San Jacinto as a waterboy and returns home to find his family intact. Carter includes details of everyday life in 1836 along with the story of the decisive battle.

Casad, Mary Brooke. BLUEBONNET AT THE ALAMO. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; \$5.95 paper. P.

Bluebonnet, a Hill Country armadillo, visits the Alamo where she meets Digger Diller. Pat Binder's full-page, cartoon-style illustrations facing each page of text show the story of the two armadillos attempting to return Jim Bowie's knife to the Alamo museum.

Chambers, Catherine E. TEXAS ROUNDUP: LIFE ON THE RANGE. Troll Associates. \$11.59; \$2.95 paper. I, J.

One of the Adventures in Frontier America Series, this book has the series format of historical fact integrated into a fictional plot. The son of Hispanic ranch owners in nineteenth-century Texas, Juan longs to participate in a cattle roundup, but finds more than he bargains for when confronted with a rustler. Ample illustration, large type, and highlighted vocabulary make this appealing to the reluctant reader.

Chorlian, Ruth W. LONG TRAIL OF THE TEXAS LONGHORNS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$9.95. I, J.

Cattle brought by Christopher Columbus to the New World in 1493 eventually arrived in the Texas missions, providing the Spanish origin of Texas ranching. The text focuses on cattle in Texas, from the trail drives and the introduction of barbed wire to present-day practices aimed at saving the Longhorn strain. In spite of the choppy, repetitious style, this story of Texas cattle is of interest.



Christian, Mary B. *GROWIN' PAINS*. Macmillan. \$11.95; Viking Penguin, Inc. \$3.95 paper. I, J.

Twelve-year-old Ginny Ruth is unhappy living with her poor mother in Clemmons, a small Texas town, in 1948. Her mother considers reading and writing poetry a waste of time while Ginny Ruth loves these activities and hopes to go to college. With the help of Mr. Billy, a disabled neighbor who understands her love of learning, Ginny Ruth comes to terms with her mother and absent father.

Clendenin, Mary Joe. *GONZALO: CORONADO'S SHEPHERD BOY*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$6.95. I.

This is an historically accurate novel about a fictional character, a young boy who might have accompanied Coronado in his adventurous life.

Cousins, Margaret. *THE BOY IN THE ALAMO*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. I, J.

This is an old favorite illustrated by Nicholas Eggenhoffer. One of the leading Texas history gurus, Walter Prescott Webb, acted as consultant for factual detail, but the pace describing the physical and emotional realities of the siege is blessed by the author's talented style.

Cox, Betty Wilke. *LIZ CARPENTER, GIRL FROM SALADO*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

Former White House press secretary to Lady Bird Johnson, Liz Carpenter is a star in her own right. A renowned journalist, Mary Elizabeth Sutherland belongs to a nineteenth-century pioneer family. She became "Liz" as a journalism student at the University of Texas, and spent much of her professional life in Washington, D.C.

Cox, Mike. *THE TEXAS RANGERS*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

The author combines storytelling and history in ten rich, compelling chapters about one of the most enduring Texas legacies. The book has a bibliography, a glossary, and splendid photographs.

Crawford, Ann F. *JANE LONG: FRONTIER WOMAN*. W. S. Benson and Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

This book traces Jane's life from young girlhood to contentment and old age in the heart of Austin's colony. An historically accurate portrayal of this brave woman who lived a memorable life among the early heroes of Texas.

Crawford, Ann F. *LIZZIE: QUEEN OF THE CATTLE TRAILS*. W. S. Benson and Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Tales of a Texas woman who dreamed of adventures and found them "going up the cattle trail" in the days when the cowboy was king on the frontier. A young schoolteacher, Lizzie Johnson kept books for the Texas cattlemen and then beat them at their own



game, taking her own herd up the trail. She became one of Texas's most successful businesswomen and a legend in her time.

Crawford, Ann F. SAM HOUSTON: AMERICAN HERO. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. P.

A simple text with many brief, excited conversations and exclamations, this book contains the outline of Houston's life. Betsy Warren's blue-and-white drawings on every page tell the Texas hero's story visually, in her usual careful, charming style. Lists of words-to-know and books about Sam Houston (without their publication dates) are included.

Davis, Joe Tom. LEGENDARY TEXANS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. Four volumes, \$12.95 each. I, J.

The author, a fifth-generation Texan, and a college teacher of Texas history, has brought together mini-biographies of twenty-nine legendary Texans. Each of the four volumes runs about two hundred pages.

De Paola, Tomie. THE LEGEND OF THE BLUEBONNET: AN OLD TALE OF TEXAS. Putnam Berkeley Group, Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95; \$5.95 paper. P, I.

The Comanche legend explaining the origin of the Texas state flower is the story of a young girl who sacrifices a doll, her most valued possession, to appease the Great Spirit and end the drought. De Paola's double-page, full-color illustrations portray the drought, the night of sacrifice, and the glorious return of spring rains and fields of bluebonnets. An author's note gives the backgrounds of the legend and the book.

De Paola, Tomie. THE LEGEND OF THE INDIAN PAINTBRUSH. Putnam Berkeley Group, Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95; \$5.95 paper. P.

This gentle tale, with color illustrations in De Paola's usual lovely style, tells of an Indian brave who finds that his gift is recording in paint the deeds of the other warriors rather than joining them in war. The wildflower grows from his discarded paintbrushes. This story is good for learning about wildflowers, Indians, and finding one's true vocation.

Devaney, John. LYNDON BAINES JOHNSON, PRESIDENT. Walker and Co. \$13.85. I, J.

Caro's biography *Lyndon Johnson: The Path to Power* was used as a source for this readable juvenile biography. It provides a picture of the whole man; his flaws, character traits, and personal friendships are noted as well as his achievements and failures. Black-and-white photographs illustrate the text. Reference aids include a map, bibliography, and index.

Dewey, Ariane. GIB MORGAN, OILMAN. Greenwillow Books. \$11.75; \$4.95 paper. P.

A charming picture-book version of the tall tales about the early days of oil-drilling in Texas and across the U.S. Gib Morgan is the real oilman who grew into a folk hero, and

the central character of these stories of exaggeration and good humor. Colorful drawings illustrate the text.

Dionne, Wanda. *THE COUTURIERE OF GALVEZ*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95. I, J.

This is the exciting adventure of Hally Carter, an eleven-year-old African American slave who wins her freedom as a dressmaker in post-Civil War Texas. The story begins when Hally is kidnapped from a Louisiana plantation and taken on a sailing ship to New Orleans.

Ebeling, Jean. *WALDO, THE GOAT DOG*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I.

This pleasant story of a guard dog on a Hill Country goat farm is illustrated with careful brown-and-white drawings by Nancy Arlitt. An easy book, good for dog lovers, it contains a glossary of unfamiliar words.

Erickson, John R. *HANK THE COWDOG SERIES*. Gulf Publishing Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95; \$6.95 paper; \$13.95 audiocassette. P, I.

*Hank the Cowdog has just made his twenty-fourth published appearance in the humorous series which appeals to students of all ages, but especially to younger ones. Stories are available on audiocassettes and as videos; a few are available in Spanish. Several are annotated here. Other titles include: It's a Dog's Life; The Curse of the Incredible Princess Corncob; The Case of the One-Eyed Killer Stud Horse; The Case of the Halloween Ghost; The Case of the Missing Cat; Lost in the Blinded Blizzard; The Case of the Car-Barkaholic Dog; The Case of the Hooking Bull; The Case of the Midnight Rustler; The Phantom in the Mirror; The Case of the Vampire Cat; The Case of the Double Bumblebee Sting; Moonlight Madness; and The Case of the Black-Hooded Hangmans.*

> **HANK THE COWDOG** is the first in the series. The misadventures of Hank, head of ranch security, and his sidekick Drover, who try to protect their master, Loper, and his wife Sally May, provide a light, humorous look at Panhandle ranch life told in cowboy dialect. Falsely accused of killing chickens, Hank leaves home to become an outlaw and takes up with two buzzards and a pack of coyotes who show him their wild, free-wheeling lifestyle. Gerald Holmes's amusing drawings illustrate the text. A cassette tape of the author reading the story is also available.

> **THE CASE OF THE HALLOWEEN GHOST**. In Hank's ninth exciting adventure, Slim cleans house, Miss Viola comes for Halloween dinner, the buzzards claim to see a ghost, and scary things happen at night. "Buzzard Love" and "Followers of the Lamb" are the songs in this silly Halloween story.

> **THE CASE OF THE ONE-EYED KILLER STUD HORSE**. The relatives spend Thanksgiving on the ranch, Sally May breaks her ankle, and Hank and Drover tangle with Tuerto, the one-eyed killer stud horse. Hank sings to the girl-cousins "Thank You Lord for Making Gals" and Sally May sings to Hank "A Fundamental Disagreement."



- **THE CURSE OF THE INCREDIBLE PRICELESS CORNCOB.** In their seventh adventure, Hank and Drover become convinced that corncobs are a priceless treasure and expend all their energy guarding the treasure from their enemy, Pete the Barncat. They have their usual problems with cowboys, cattle, and coyotes, as well. The songs in this story are "I'm Rich" and "My Heart Goes Wild for You."
- **THE FURTHER ADVENTURES OF HANK THE COWDOG.** Hank is stricken with "eye-crosserosis," humiliated by a mean Doberman, and bewitched by a little owl, Madame Moonshine. Erickson's tall-tale storytelling includes wordplay, doggerel, and crafty tricks that will appeal to young readers.
- **HANK THE COWDOG: FADED LOVE.** Hank disrupts little Alfred's birthday party, meets the beautiful beagle Miss Scamper, and tangles with a giant rattlesnake. Hank's songs are "Rotten Meat" and "Beulah's Song." Gerald Holmes's black-line drawings add to the humor of the story.
- **HANK THE COWDOG: LET SLEEPING DOGS LIE.** In their sixth adventure, Hank and Drover destroy Sally May's garden while fighting friends in the middle of the night, and chase chicken killers and mailmen. Hank avoids being the buzzards' breakfast by performing a heroic act.
- **HANK THE COWDOG: MURDER IN THE MIDDLE PASTURE.** High Loper and Sally May leave the ranch for Christmas, while Hank, Drover, and Slim guard the place from outlaw dogs and coyotes. "The Cold Weather Cowdog Blues" is sung by Hank, as is a parody of "Good Night, Irene."

Evey, Ethel L. **STOWAWAY TO TEXAS.** Larksdale. \$9.95; \$6.95 paper. I.

After his father is unjustly imprisoned, thirteen-year-old Allen Dupree flees New Orleans in 1837, stowing away on a Texas-bound ship. He meets rough and kind frontier characters while seeking aid for his father. The novel is an historically accurate picture of sailing to Galveston and of crossing frontier East Texas, and has a happy ending.

Eytcheson, Pat. **CATCH A WINNER.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$3.95 paper. P.

The large type and simple plotline of this book about a foal born on a quarter-horse ranch in the Hill Country will appeal to younger readers, especially horse fans. Joe Peacock's black-and-white, full-page drawings of horses are well executed, though the people in them seem to have stepped out of the 1950s, and all the children are white.

Eytcheson, Pat. **CATCH A WINNER LEAVES THE RANCH.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$3.95 paper. P.

Growing up and learning to change can be a bittersweet lesson. "Catch a Winner" learned it only too well. Her days of running like the wind and playing in the silky green pasture end when she undergoes the schooling required on quarter-horse farms, where the horses are trained for ranch work, rodeos, or racing. She learns quickly and passes with flying colors.



Ferguson, Joe. **THE DEATHLESS WHITE STALLION AND OTHER TALES.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I.

Five well-written stories from different Southwestern cultures make up this book, including a standardized version of an Uncle Remus story and a Mexican "Cinderella." Aaron Morris's drawings are clear and realistic or cartoon-like as appropriate to the story. A nice preface explains the origin of the stories and the importance of storytelling in all cultures, and a glossary of Spanish and English terms is included.

Fisher, Lillian M. **BRAVE BESSIE: FLYING FREE.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. I, J.

In the early twentieth century, two years before the renowned Amelia Earhart earned her pilot's license, Bessie Coleman, the first African American aviator in Texas, achieved this same highly significant goal.

Flynn, Jean. **JIM BOWIE: A TEXAS LEGEND.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

Well written, lively, and fast moving, this biography covers Bowie's early years in Louisiana, the wealth he garnered as a businessman, and his constant search for new adventures, culminating in his death while defending the Alamo. The book does not shrink from describing his involvement in the illegal trade of slaves, and its depiction of Native Americans is even-handed.

Flynn, Jean. **LADY: THE STORY OF CLAUDIA ALTA (LADY BIRD) JOHNSON.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. J, S.

Known foremost as the wife of President Lyndon B. Johnson, Lady Bird Johnson has shown an identity and resourcefulness which has won the heart of this generation's young Texans. Born in northeast Texas, Mrs. Johnson enjoyed a rich family and political life, and in recent years has increasingly dedicated her days to restoration and wildflower preservation.

Flynn, Jean. **STEPHEN F. AUSTIN: THE FATHER OF TEXAS.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

In the Stories for Young Americans Series, this is a biography of the "Father of Texas," which portrays the significance of Austin's career and also shows his human foibles.

Flynn, Jean. **WILLIAM BARRET TRAVIS: VICTORY OR DEATH.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

A carefully researched, honest portrayal of the Texas hero who led the Texans in the Battle of the Alamo. Information about Travis's marital difficulties are included along with his political activities. Black-and-white drawings and a bibliography of source materials enhance the volume.



Fowler, Zinita. GHOST STORIES OF OLD TEXAS, Vols. 1 & 2. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95 each. I.

Dozens of ghost stories are retold in exciting storytelling versions by a winner of the Siddle Joe Johnson Award for excellence in children's librarianship. Stories, some in ballad form, describe lost mines and buried treasure, familiar from Dobie sources. Others tell of spirits, wraiths, ghosts, and visions with great good humor.

Fox, Mary V. A QUEEN NAMED KING: HENRIETTA OF THE KING RANCH. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$8.95. I, J.

The fascinating life of Henrietta Chamberlain King, the Presbyterian minister's daughter who married Captain Richard King in 1854 and spent the rest of her life building the King Ranch, is told in this well-written biography. Life on the ranch, with its hardships and accomplishments, is described. This biography of an unusual Texas pioneer woman is illustrated with black-and-white sketches.

Fox, Vivian. THE WINDING TRAIL: THE ALABAMA-COUSHATTA INDIANS OF TEXAS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$7.95. I, J.

The history and customs of the Alabama-Coushatta Indians from prehistoric times to the present, with traditional and modern lifestyles compared. Life on the only Indian reservation presently in Texas is described, and illustrated in black-and-white photographs.

Fritz, Jean. MAKE WAY FOR SAM HOUSTON. Putnam Berkeley Group, Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; \$5.95 paper. I, J.

In this outstanding biography of Houston, the first two chapters set the stage of his early life, and the rest of the book presents a lively, readable account of his Texas years. Houston comes alive through Fritz's skillful use of interesting historic detail to draw the hero's colorful, flawed, human, but extraordinary character. An index and bibliography are useful inclusions.

Garza, Carmen Lomas. FAMILY PICTURES: CUADROS DE FAMILIA. Children's Press; Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. J, S.

Carmen Lomas Garza is a folk artist who painted more than a dozen pictures of her memories of growing up in a Texas border town. She was then interviewed to create the text which appears first in English, then in Spanish. The result is Carmen's lovingly told story of her childhood in a traditional Hispanic community in South Texas. The pictures and story show the everyday activities that remain vivid in Carmen's memory: picking oranges for her grandmother, making tamales with the entire family, swimming in the Gulf of Mexico.

Gilbert, Minnie. SUNRISE SONG. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I, J.

Tells of Rosita's fifteenth year, September 15, 1910, to September 15, 1911, culminating in her quinceañera, and is filled with the excitement of the Rio Grande Valley during the



Mexican Revolution. Mexican customs, folklore, and holiday celebrations are explained to Helen, Rosita's Anglo friend. Marilyn Moseley's black-and-white drawings are a charming addition to the story.

Gipson, Fred. **THE TRAIL-DRIVING ROOSTER**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I, J.

This delightful tall tale about a scrawny rooster on an 1881 cattle drive from Texas to Dodge City is Gipson's first book for children, published in 1955. Dick "crowed the bunch out of bed" and won his way into the cowboys' hearts, not their stomachs, by his entertaining antics.

Gonzalez, Catherine T. **CYNTHIA ANN PARKER: INDIAN CAPTIVE**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

Cynthia Ann, abducted by Comanches in 1836 during the Fort Parker massacre and recovered with her daughter Prairie Flower in 1860, became Texas's best-known Indian captive. Quanah Parker, last of the Comanche chiefs, was her son.

Gonzalez, Catherine T. **JANE LONG: THE MOTHER OF TEXAS**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Jane Long, "The Mother of Texas," followed her husband, Dr. James Long, on an unsuccessful expedition to free Texas from Spain. During the winter of 1821-1822 she lived on Bolivar Point near Galveston, fought off Karankawa Indians, and survived cruel hardships, leaving only after learning of her husband's death in Mexico, where he had been imprisoned. Later she settled in Brazoria as an active member of Austin's colony.

Gonzalez, Catherine T. **LAFITTE: THE TERROR OF THE GULF**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

In 1817 Jean Lafitte established Campeche, his pirate headquarters at Galveston. There he built a fine home where he lived until 1821 when he was ordered to leave by the United States government. This biography emphasizes the adventurous role Lafitte played in Texas history.

Gurasich, Marj. **BENITO AND THE WHITE DOVE: A STORY OF JOSÉ ANTONIO NAVARRO, HERO OF EARLY TEXAS**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I.

The life of José Antonio Navarro is told through the conversations of the Texas hero with twelve-year-old Benito, son of the jailer at de Ulloa prison in Vera Cruz where Navarro was imprisoned for three years in the mid-1840s. Benito learns the importance of point of view in calling someone a traitor or hero, and hears the history of Navarro, one of two native Texans who signed the Texas Declaration of Independence. The dialogue contains a smattering of Spanish words that are defined in a glossary. Navarro's chronology and a bibliography are also included in this work of historical fiction.



Gurasich, Marj. DID YOU EVER MEET A TEXAS HERO? Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I.

The author presents an innovative series of mini-biographies by introducing each with a relevant question. For example, she prefaces the story of José Antonio Navarro by asking young readers, "Did you ever suffer for something you really believed in?"

Gurasich, Marj. LETTERS TO OMA and A HOUSE DIVIDED. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95 each. I, J.

The captivating account of a teenager who left Germany with her family as part of the *Adelsverein* settlement in Texas is appealing to older teenagers, too. Christina, homesick and missing her grandmother, writes a series of letters about the adventures, and all-too-many misadventures, that befall them in the months following their arrival. *A House Divided* takes up the story, which began in 1847, recounting the effect of the Civil War on the German Texans who disapproved of slavery and believed the Union must be sustained.

Gurasich, Marj. RED WAGONS AND WHITE CANVAS: MOLLIE BAILEY, CIRCUS QUEEN OF THE SOUTHWEST. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

Mollie Bailey eloped in 1856, and left Alabama for Texas. Based on a true story, the novel centers on her and young Jeremiah, who joined "Aunt Mollie's" circus and was trained as an aerialist in the Mollie Bailey Show, "A Texas Show for Texas People." This is a pleasant introduction to a fascinating woman who was famous during her own time. Reference aids include author's notes, a glossary of circus terms, and a bibliography.

Hancock, Sibyl. SPINDLETOP. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$7.95. P.

The day Jimmy's father struck oil, January 10, 1901, was the day the well on Spindletop hill near Beaumont "blew in." The suspense of drilling, the excitement of striking oil, and the dangers of explosions and fires are portrayed in simple text with black-and-white line drawings. Patty Rucker is the artist for this revised, illustrated edition.

Hancock, Sibyl and Fay Venable. TEXAS: YESTERDAY AND TODAY. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$7.95. P, I.

A simple, large-type introduction to Texas history, heavily illustrated with photographs and containing basic facts of the state's history, geography, weather, and industry, as well as information about eleven cities.

Hargrove, J. LYNDON B. JOHNSON. Children's Press. \$14.40. P, I, J.

This well-written and easy-to-read book surveys the life of the Texas politician who became America's thirty-sixth president and faced great public controversy during the war in Vietnam. Johnson's role in the creation of legislation for social change is also covered. Includes a chronology (with Johnson's life span shaded), an index, and black-and-white photographs.



Harman, Betty. *THE MOON ROCK HEIST*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. I, J.

When a moon rock, on loan from NASA, is stolen from their high school library, Joseph and his Vietnamese-refugee friend Huy are among the suspects. With the help of Joseph's dog and a friendly federal investigator, they begin to search for it, hoping to avoid trouble since Vietnamese shrimpers like Huy's father are the target of local resentment. Though not entirely believable, the story is nonetheless original and fun.

Harman, Betty. *PACO AND THE LION OF THE NORTH*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I, J.

Paco is a rich and well-educated Mexican boy captured by Pancho Villa and his men when they raid his father's ranch for horses. In the time he spends with Villa he comes to respect him and to understand the causes of the revolution even as he despises its violence. A well-written and thoughtful book with an interesting point of view, the novel is supplemented by a glossary and a bibliography.

Harris, Leon A. *THE NIGHT BEFORE CHRISTMAS—IN TEXAS, THAT IS*. Pelican Publishing Co., Inc. \$9.95. P, I.

A Western Santa—decked out in Levis and a ten-gallon stetson—makes his journey on a buckboard piled high with presents.

Hartley, Mary M. *MARIPOSA: A TOUGH TEXAN IN A TIME CAPSULE*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. P, I.

A mix of Texas history and fairy tale, this is the story of a tiny magical boy who affects the course of Texas history by waving his wand. At different eras in time he aids oil drillers and astronauts, helps put out a prairie fire, leads a cattle drive, and rescues a lost boy from the Big Thicket. Would be best for reading aloud to small children, who won't notice the mistakes and the anti-Indian bias, and who might be charmed by the magic.

Hawthorne, Dorothy. *CHOCOLATE WILDCAT*. Corona Publishing Co. \$11.95; \$5.95 paper. I, J.

In this fantasy based on the oil business, ten-year-old Ham Buntz of Mesquite County struggles to save the Lone Star schools with earnings from the chocolate syrup pouring out of the Katie No. 25 well. This good-humored, improbable story has a small-town West Texas flavor that Texans and chocolate lovers will enjoy.

Hoff, Carol. *JOHNNY TEXAS*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.50. I, J.

This modern classic children's novel and its sequel, set in the Texas revolutionary period, relate the experiences of ten-year-old Johann Friedrichs, who migrated with his German family to Texas in 1836. While his father is away fighting for independence, "Johnny Texas" and his mother and sister join the Runaway Scrape. The pleasures and hardships of pioneer life are seen through the boy's experiences. The author, a descendant of pioneers, won the 1950 Wilcox-Follett Award and the 1950 Texas Institute of Letters Award for the book, which has been reprinted several times.



Hoff, Carol. JOHNNY TEXAS ON THE SAN ANTONIO ROAD. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

Johnny Texas, accompanied only by his dog Patches, sets out on a 600-mile journey on the Old San Antonio Road to deliver a load of goods across the Mexican border and return with the gold, all in time to pay a note that is due on his father's mill. As Johnny travels down the historic road, he follows a path traveled by heroes of the early Texas Republic. The frontier holds both danger and excitement for Johnny as he makes a trip that leaves him changed forever, and yet more grateful for his Texas home.

Hoff, Carol. WILDERNESS PIONEER: STEPHEN F. AUSTIN OF TEXAS. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. I, J.

This outstanding juvenile biography of Austin by a well-known Texas author is based on Eugene C. Barker's definitive work, *The Father of Texas*, and source material from the Austin papers. The incredible hardships and dangers Austin survived in order to establish his colony and the selfless devotion he sustained in order to maintain it are portrayed sensitively and in depth. This is a well-written, comprehensive portrait that is intelligible to the younger reader.

Hoobler, Dorothy. PROMISE AT THE ALAMO: THE STORY OF A TEXAS GIRL. Silver Burdett Press. \$16.95. J.

As Santa Anna's troops gather outside the walls of the Alamo, Maria and her family prepare to defend the newly forming Republic of Texas. Set in 1863, this story of a girl's courage and determination to keep a promise brings to life the heroic battle of the Alamo. This book recounts an important event and celebrates the Hispanic culture.

Huebel, Russ. THE BIG BAD WOLF IN TEXAS. Cayo Del Grullo Press. \$6.25 paper. I, J.

This fairy-tale parody of "The Three Little Pigs" features a wolf who eats ham-on-rye and pumpkin pie, and visits the Texas coast where he downs Lone Star beer and tamales on the beach. Full-page, black-and-white drawings illustrate the story, which is good for a light moment or for older children to practice identifying cliches.

Jakes, John. SUSANNA OF THE ALAMO: A TRUE STORY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$13.95. P, I.

As a survivor of the Battle of the Alamo, Susanna Dickinson played a role in Texas independence by meeting with Santa Anna and being able to carry messages to Houston. The story is simplified and romanticized, and contains fictional dialogue. The lovely, pastel illustrations, maps on the endpapers, and portraits of the Texas heroes make the book especially appealing.

Jones, Martha Tannery. GREAT TEXAS SCARE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

A vivid interpretation of the Runaway Scrape, when terrified families headed east to get



away from Santa Anna's encroaching army. The story is dramatized with an anecdotal account of two neighboring families at Nacogdoches.

Jones, Martha Tannery. *MYSTERY OF Y'BARBO'S TUNNEL*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. P, I.

In 1930s Nacogdoches, Jesse and Doug search for a missing person in a tunnel beneath the drugstore where Jesse works. Rumor suggests that Gil Y'Barbo, founder of Nacogdoches, dug the tunnel to escape from Indians; but it takes a series of adventures to solve the mystery. The book is illustrated by Donna Loughran.

Kellogg, Steven. *PECOS BILL*. William Morrow and Co., \$15.95; Scholastic, \$4.95 paper. P, I.

This picture-book introduction to the cowboy tall-tale hero is worthy of being on every child's reading list. Lively, colorful drawings expand the text to heighten the flavor of the folk hero. Use this book for reading aloud and invite the child to read it himself.

*Rita Kerr has written numerous books for young people, immortalising people, events, and places of the past by her fictional interpretations. Several books address the settlement of immigrant families from Europe. Seven are annotated below. Other titles include: Texas Forever; Christopher and Ponyboy; The Haunted House; The Ghost of Panna Maria; The Alamo Cat; A Wee Bit of Texas; Girl of the Alamo; and Tex's Tales. At present Texas First Lady is out of print. Most of the books are available from either Eakin Publications or the Hendrick-Long Publishing Company.*

Kerr, Rita. *THE IMMORTAL THIRTY-TWO*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I.

The story of the thirty-two men from Gonzales who answered the pleas for assistance and rode to fight at the Alamo is told in three chapters. The plot features three sixteen-year-old boys who were in the group.

Kerr, Rita. *JUAN SEGUIN: A HERO OF TEXAS*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I.

A Tejano revolutionary hero's biography, the book briefly sketches Seguin's early life and emphasizes his participation in the war and the rebuilding of the new republic. Unfortunately the author uses stereotypical behavior of Mexicans, as sleepy people, that detracts from the text.

Kerr, Rita. *TEXAS FOOTPRINTS*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I, J.

Kerr, a direct descendant of Stephen F. Austin's "Old Three Hundred" families, offers a look at what life was like for those first Anglo settlers in Texas, including a fictionalized tale about her own great-great-grandparents, who met and married a few years after their arrival in Texas. The book includes accounts of the settlers' involvement in the Runaway Scrape and the Battle of San Jacinto. Perhaps this is a little too much to squeeze into one book. The primitive illustrations are by the author.



Kerr, Rita. **TEXAS MARVEL**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I, J.

Based on a true story of two boys captured by Indians in the 1830s near Goliad, this book seeks to describe as much of the settlers' lives as it can. Despite the awkward dialogue, the book is interesting and informative. A bibliography is included.

Kerr, Rita. **THE TEXAS ORPHANS**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I.

The tale draws on the Christian Aid Society's orphan train that placed 200,000 children in foster care across America between 1853 and 1929. Recounts how Tommy and Eddie, who rode the train to Seguin, adjusted to their new surroundings. Urban youngsters, they learned to cope with country living, enjoying plentiful adventures along the way.

Kerr, Rita. **TEXAS REBEL**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I.

A sequel to *Texas Footprints*, this book tells the story of Churchill Roberts, the oldest son of the couple who married in the earlier book. Like its predecessor, this book mixes war and romance, but more successfully. Churchill and his brother fight for the Confederate Army in Louisiana, Arkansas, and Texas. A glossary and bibliography are included.

Kerr, Rita. **TEXAS ROSE: DILUE ROSE HARRIS**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I.

A middle-grade biography of an eight-year-old girl and her family who settled in Texas in 1833, this tells of childhood experiences at the time of Texas independence. The fictionalized story of the doctor's daughter and the details of family life at the time might appeal to children in this age group.

King, Larry L. **THAT TERRIBLE NIGHT SANTA GOT LOST IN THE WOODS**. Encino Press. \$20.00. ML.

A personal recollection of a family Christmas in Eastland County, Texas, in 1933 when the author's "rag-tag poor, dirt farmer" father went out in a blizzard to get presents for his four-year-old son. The Texas Institute of Letters award-winning author and illustrator Patrick Oliphant have created a heart-warming story.

Klingel, Zandra. **SAM HOUSTON** and **DAVY CROCKETT**. Creative Education, Inc. \$14.95 each. ML.

These two titles, from *We the People* biography series, are written for students at third-grade reading level, but the interest level stretches on either side from grades two to twelve. The thirty-two-page books allow readers to grasp the story and significance of great lives in American history.

Knapik, Jane. **SARAH'S FLAG**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. P, I.

Several descendants of Sarah Rudolph Bradey Dodson shared their tales with the author

about the woman who moved from Kentucky to Texas in the 1820s and stitched the first Lone Star flag. Sarah's husband, Archie Dodson, fought at the Battle of San Jacinto. Illustrated by J. Kay Wilson.

Kuskin, Karla. *THE DALLAS TITANS GET READY FOR BED*. Harper and Row Publishers, Inc. \$11.95; \$4.95 paper. P.

A delightful picture-book about a fictional football team's post-game activities. Each player's character is developed and his position described. Mounds of equipment and clothing used by the players are described in the humorous locker room interchange. Texans might especially enjoy the double-page night scene of the Dallas skyline.

Liles, Maurine Walpole. *BOY OF BLOSSOM PRAIRIE*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95; \$5.95 paper. I.

This is a fictionalized biography of John Nance Garner, who served as speaker of the House of Representatives, and later as vice president with Franklin D. Roosevelt. It is illustrated with drawings and photographs.

Liles, Maurine Walpole. *KITTY OF BLOSSOM PRAIRIE*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$5.95 paper. I.

In 1851 Kitty Garner traveled from Tennessee to Texas in an ox-drawn covered wagon. Some years later her nephew, John Nance Garner IV, served as U.S. vice president. The illustrated book includes historical notes, a genealogy, and a bibliography.

Liles, Maurine Walpole. *REBECCA OF BLOSSOM PRAIRIE*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$5.95 paper. I.

When Rebecca Walpole Garner left her Tennessee home in 1851 and traveled by ox-drawn covered wagon to Texas, she had no way of knowing that she would later be grandmother of a United States vice president. Her grandson, John Nance Garner, served Franklin D. Roosevelt as his vice president, after being speaker of the U.S. House of Representatives.

Liles, Maurine Walpole. *SAM AND THE SPEAKER'S CHAIR*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95; \$5.95 paper. J.

A legend in his own time, Sam Rayburn of Texas became speaker of the U.S. House, and introduced legislative achievements such as the REA which brought electricity to American farms, GI insurance, and veterans' disability payments. Written about a colorful character, the book makes lively reading for students, especially those interested in civic responsibility. The book is indexed and illustrated with drawings and photographs.

Lindquist, Marie. *DREAMS AT DAWN*. Bantam Doubleday, Dell Publishing Group. \$2.95 paper. J, S.

The first book in the Texas Promises teen-romance series, this is the story of a poor



rancher's daughter who organizes and cooks for a cattle drive from San Antonio to Sedalia, Missouri. Maggie falls in love with Juan Ortiz, son of the trail boss. The book has excitement, adventure, and a romantic setting, but no depth or insight into the Texas experience.

Lindquist, Marie. *HIDDEN LONGINGS*. Bantam Doubleday, Dell Publishing Group. \$2.50 paper. J, S.

The third in the series, a teen romance about the life of a beautiful rich girl on a Texas ranch in the 1860s who falls in love with her poor but handsome, virile neighbor Juan. Overcoming pride and the attempts of another beautiful rich girl to steal him away, Charlotte learns to fight for what she cares about, and is rewarded with a happy ending.

Littlejohn, E. G. *TEXAS HISTORY STORIES*. State House Press. \$9.95. I, J.

While approaches to historical figures have changed, the essence has remained untouched. Originally published in 1901, these thirteen illustrated stories about such figures as Davy Crockett, Cabeza de Vaca, and Robert E. Lee, have a timeless quality that will appeal, perhaps in a more sophisticated way, to present-day readers.

McCafferty, Jim. *HOLT AND THE COWBOYS*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Holt, a Mississippi-born slave, proves his worth on the Texas prairie following his emancipation after the Civil War. Befriended by Texas governor Lawrence Sullivan Ross, he finds a job on a ranch near Austin and soon overcomes the prejudice of the Anglo cowboys with whom he works.

McDonald, Archie. *WHEN CORN GROWS TALL IN TEXAS*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$11.95. I.

The story of a family starting a new life as farmers in 1830s Texas. The father passes on farming skills to his son before setting out with other settlers from Gonzales to defend the Alamo.

McKelvey, David. *COMMANDER THE GANDER*. Corona Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$3.95 paper. I.

Offspring of a Canada gander and a Chinese domestic goose, rescued from being a python's dinner at the Brownsville Zoo, Commander grows up in the Texas Hill Country under the watchful eye of a sympathetic wildlife biologist who tells his story. Humorous incidents of rural life, mating, migrating, and returning give insights into the goose's habits as well as the humans in the neighborhood. This is a most enjoyable short-story, heavily illustrated with William Asklin's black-and-white drawings.

McKelvey, David. *MAVERICK THE LUCKY LONGHORN*. Corona Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$3.95 paper. P.

McKelvey's brown-and-orange illustrations add interest to this tale of the adventures of a



young Longhorn. When roundup and branding time come, Maverick's Momma tears down a fence to keep him from having to be branded. He feels lucky to get to stay "wild" another year; the message for the young reader is unclear.

Martinello, Marian L. CEDAR FEVER. Corona Publishing Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95; \$7.95 paper. I, J.

The author brings her multi-ethnic skills to tell the tale of Katie Koenig, a German American growing up in the Texas Hill Country during World War I. The characters, comfortably ensconced in their special time and place, recreate the atmosphere of a region far from the battlefield, but where human emotions brought the war close. Katie comes of age in difficult times, challenged by personal feelings and the suspicion among neighbors regarding the community's allegiance.

Martinello, Marian L. WITH DOMINGO LEAL IN SAN ANTONIO: 1734. Institute of Texan Cultures. \$3.95. I, J.

An exciting tale is told about a day in the life of ten-year-old Domingo, an early settler from the Canary Islands. He goes from doing his family chores to the Mission, where he visits a blacksmith and soldiers at the barracks, and sees hostile Indians. Daily customs and Spanish phrases are introduced in the story.

Marvin, Isabel R. JOSEFINA AND THE HANGING TREE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I.

Set in 1857, teenager Josefina and her friend Maxi are caught up in the Cart War in Goliad. Together they are able to delay a hanging long enough for the Texas Rangers to come and take charge of the situation.

Marvin, Isabel R. SHIPWRECKED ON PADRE ISLAND. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

Taking history back over the centuries, this story begins in the spring of 1554 when three Spanish ships run aground on Padre Island in the Gulf of Mexico. One of the passengers, thirteen-year-old Catalina, finds she has lost a cherished bracelet while on the island recovering from the shipwreck. The loss links her to a girl visiting the island in 1993.

Matthews, Billie P. SECRET OF THE CIBOLO. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$9.95. I, J.

Hispanic culture and traditions are introduced in this story set on a ranch on the San Antonio River in 1913. Carlos Garcia, a descendant of the early Spanish *hidalgo* settlers, and his Anglo friend Billy, meet Gregorio Cortez, a Tejano folk hero who has gone to jail for killing a sheriff who had shot his brother. Ranch activities and customs of the time are woven into the story along with an account of the sometimes strained ethnic relations in the region. A glossary of Spanish terms assists the reader.



Matthews, Billie P. and Virginia P. Hurlburt. CLOUDS OVER TEXAS. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$7.95. I.

This is a Texas Revolution adventure story about two boys, one an Anglo from Tennessee, the other a native Texan, who get to know each other during the time of the Republic.

Matthews, Billie P. and Virginia P. Hurlburt. DAVY'S DAWG. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$4.95. I, J.

This is the story of the Alamo from the perspective of Rip, Davy Crockett's dog. It presents the siege and surrounding events in a palatable way for animal lovers who find this approach to history easier to assimilate.

Meyer, Carolyn. WHERE THE BROKEN HEART STILL BEATS. Texas Christian University Press. \$16.95; \$6.95 paper. J, S.

This is a fascinating account of Cynthia Ann Parker, who was captured in 1836, at the age of nine, by a band of Comanches who took her from her West Texas home, and later returned as the wife of a chief. The story is familiar, but this version is distinguished by its wealth of detail about life in a Comanche community.

Milligan, Bryce. WITH THE WIND, KEVIN DOLAN. Corona Publishing Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95; \$7.95 paper. J, S.

A novel about the Irish immigrant experience, this book is written in three parts: British oppression and leave-taking from the close Irish family in hopes of a better life; dangerous sea voyage; and securing a Mexican land grant and establishing a home in the South Texas wilderness in the 1830s. The Irish Catholic settlers in pre-revolutionary Texas have different perspectives and sympathies than the American settlers toward the Mexican government. The best-drawn character, Kevin Dolan, who travels and works with his older bother Tom, develops as he confronts the frontier.

Mills, Betty J. AMANDA GOES WEST: A JOURNAL OF FASHION HISTORY THROUGH PAPER DOLLS. Texas Tech Press. \$5.95. P, I, J.

Part of a lengthy series, the Amanda books represent an accurate fashion history in paper-doll format, with color illustrations of clothing and artifacts of the period from 1838 to 1842. Brief journal entries describe the life of Amanda, a fictional pioneer girl, and her family. Tales of the long journey by wagon, distant neighbors, limited supplies, a frontier Christmas, and an engagement are told, based on factual accounts. This delightful book is the first of three in the Amanda Series.

Mills, Betty J. AMANDA'S HOME ON THE RANGE: A JOURNAL OF FASHION HISTORY THROUGH PAPER DOLLS. Texas Tech Press. \$6.95. P, I, J.

In book three, Amanda is a grandmother who, with her husband, homesteads a ranch on the Texas frontier. During this period of Amanda's life, covering the years from 1863 to 1890, fashions change much more rapidly than during previous periods.

Mills, Betty J. *AMANDA'S NEW LIFE: A JOURNAL OF FASHION HISTORY THROUGH PAPER DOLLS*. Texas Tech Press. \$5.95. P, I, J.

In book two of the Amanda Series, Amanda prepares her trousseau, marries a Texas Ranger, and has a family amid the danger and hardships of the Texas frontier. Journal entries tell of the daily activities and political events of the period 1843 to 1862. Full-color paper dolls display period costumes and artifacts.

Mitchell, Mark. *THE MUSTANG PROFESSOR: THE STORY OF J. FRANK DOBIE*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I.

J. Frank Dobie was a writer, a celebrity, and a man with a mission—to portray his beloved Texas frontier and to tip the boat that accepted blind conformity. The author, also illustrator, of this biography for the young does not hold back from offering a full account of Dobie's turbulent life. The book has a glossary and a bibliography.

Montgomery, Charlotte. *THE TRAIL NORTH*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I.

Winner of the Texas Institute of Letters Juvenile Award, Montgomery innovatively tells the history of Texas through nine short stories that focus on the perspectives of young people or animals. The chronology begins with prehistory and ends in the present day.

Morgan, Elizabeth. *JANE LONG: A CHILD'S PICTORIAL HISTORY*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95. I.

Each left-hand page features a photograph or map, while the facing page focuses on biographical features about the woman known as "The Mother of Texas."

Morgan, Elizabeth. *PRESIDENT MIRABEAU B. LAMAR*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I.

Fifty photographs accompany this detailed biography of the early president of Texas, who is remembered not only as a soldier and statesman, but also for founding Austin as the capital city of Texas, and for establishing the Texas public school system.

Munson, Sammye. *HEJ TEXAS, GOODBYE SWEDEN!* Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95. I, J.

Although ostensibly a novel about a fifteen-year-old immigrant from Sweden, the book provides an informative account of the lifestyles of other youthful Texans in 1880. By introducing a romance, the author shows the universality of adolescent emotions.

Munson, Sammye. *OUR TEJANO HEROES*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I.

Provides students with a look at the mixed cultural heritage of Texas. Five of the twenty short biographies of Hispanic leaders in the state date to the Texas Revolution. Others are more recent and include a U.S. congressman, a federal district judge, and an archbishop. Photographs, a bibliography, and a pronunciation key.



Neeley, Gwen Cone. MISS IMA AND THE HOGG FAMILY. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95; \$8.95 paper. J, S.

This is a biography of one of Texas's favorite daughters. Ima Hogg, whose father was the first Texas-born governor of the state, led a full and philanthropic life, generously sharing her blessings and gifts with the people of the state. She lived from 1882 to 1975, and the book sets her life-span against a backdrop of the burgeoning of Texas cultural life, economy, and other historic elements.

Nelson, Theresa. DEVIL STORM. Orchard Books, Watts. \$12.99; \$3.25 paper. I, J.

The impact of the September 8, 1900, hurricane on the Carroll family of Bolivar is the central force of this story. Teenager Walter and his younger sister meet and befriend Tom, reputedly the son of Jean Lafitte. When the storm hits Walter insists that the family leave their low-lying farm and pass the terrifying night sheltered at a lighthouse. Nelson gives a sensitive picture of the prejudice toward Tom, and a vivid sense of place of the Galveston area.

Neugeboren, Jay. POLI: A MEXICAN BOY IN EARLY TEXAS. Corona Publishing Co.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. I, J.

This historical novel is set in 1839, during the time of the Republic of Texas. The young hero, José Policarpo Rodriguez, crossed the border from Mexico with his father. He rode with the Comanches, and saw his Indian friends abused. Then, as the Mexican War approached, young Poli found himself needing to define his loyalty to each of three early Texas cultures: the Mexican, Indian, and Anglo. The fictional account paints a detailed portrait of Republic times.

*Joan L. Nixon has written several popular teenage and young adult novels with a contemporary Texas setting.*

Nixon, Joan L. BEATS ME, CLAUDE. Viking Penguin, Inc. \$11.95; \$4.99 paper. P.

This delightful picture-book story about a favorite pioneer couple, Shirley and Claude, is a sequel to *If You Say So, Claude*. Shirley fails miserably in her attempts to make an apple pie for Claude, but has a series of hilarious adventures in the meantime, and an orphan boy who can make delicious apple pie comes to the rescue. A pet armadillo adds to the Texas flavor.

Nixon, Joan L. FAT CHANCE, CLAUDE. Viking Penguin, Inc. \$11.95; \$4.99 paper. P.

Shirley and Claude fans will be happy to read about the meeting and romance of this funny pioneer couple in the prequel to *If You Say So, Claude* and *Beats Me, Claude*. In her usual determined fashion, Shirley sets out for the Colorado gold field right behind Claude's wagon and proves that she can take care of herself, and Claude too. Instead of fighting over a claim, they marry. Children will enjoy the many details in the colorful watercolors.

O'Rear, Sybil J. CHARLES GOODNIGHT. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I.

Recommended by the *Texas School Librarian*, this is the story of the renowned pioneer who created new cattle trails and established the first ranch in Palo Duro in the Texas Panhandle. Goodnight was also a Texas Ranger. A fast-paced and lively account.

Pate, J'Nell L. RANALD SLIDELL MACKENZIE. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I.

This is a realistic historical novel about a brave cavalry colonel whose energetic endeavors influenced the paths of the Civil and Indian Wars in Texas and the Southwest.

Paulsen, Gary. THE CROSSING. Dell Publishing Co. \$3.99. J, S.

Manny Bustos is an orphan, scrambling for survival on the streets of Juárez, Mexico. He sleeps in a cardboard box and fights with boys bigger and older than him for the coins American tourists throw off the bridge between El Paso, Texas, and his town. Across the border, Sergeant Robert Locke, a Vietnam vet, searches for a way to drown the cries for help of his dead friends and finds it in Cutty Sark whisky. On the night that Manny dares the crossing, the two meet in an explosive encounter that fills the night with tension and endless possibilities. A powerful book.

Penson, Mary A. YOU'RE AN ORPHAN, MOLLIE BROWN. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I.

Mollie's teacher helps her cope with a new lifestyle in North Central Texas during the 1870s after her mother dies, and her twin brother and her father are away. Illustrated by Charles Shaw.

Polk, Stella G. GLORY GIRL. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$9.95. I, J.

A poetically minded orphan runs away from her orphanage in East Texas, and truckers drop her off with an old woman who needs help with her Hill Country farm. Granny Hutch is gruff, but she takes good care of Eve who loves the primitive way of life on the farm. Her happiness is marred only by Granny's plans to send her back to the orphanage. An unusual book, especially good for children who can appreciate the beauty and the cruelty of nature.

Reynolds, Patrick M. TEXAS LORE SERIES. Red Rose Studio; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$49.50 the set; Vols. 1-4, \$12.95 the set; \$3.95 separate volumes. Set presented in three slipcovers. I, J.

While the series is definitely not fiction, its enjoyable cartoon format makes it an appealing read outside the classroom. Begun as a cartoon feature in the *Houston Post* several years ago, the wide-ranging stories have been gathered into several volumes. The most recent are the jointly bound volumes 11 and 12. Volume 11 concentrates on the neglected period when France and Spain were vying to control the continent with Texas as the key. Volume 12 features several ethnic groups in their early settings, such as the Chinese in El Paso and the Danes in Wharton County. The books are informative and great fun!



Rice, James. GASTON SERIES. Pelican Publishing Co., Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95 and \$14.95; coloring books \$2.75. P, I.

*Gaston the Cajun alligator first appeared over twenty years ago, in 1974. Some of his adventures are recounted in reading-and-looking books, illustrated by the author; others are for coloring. All are set in a geographical span from the Louisiana Gulf Coast westward through Texas. Three are annotated here. Other titles pertinent to Texas in the series include: Gaston and the Green-Nosed Alligator (also a coloring book); Lyn and the Fuzzy; Cajun Night Before Christmas (also a coloring book); Gaston Goes to Texas; Texas Alphabet; and Texas Jack at the Alamo.*

> GASTON DRILLS AN OFFSHORE OIL WELL. Gaston leaves the Louisiana bayou to drill for oil in the Gulf of Mexico and become the richest alligator in the world. More technical terminology is used in the text than in previous Gaston adventure books, and a glossary of terms is included. Rice's appealing drawings and text create a cheerful, lively introduction to the offshore oil business.

> GASTON GOES TO TEXAS. Blown by a storm from the Louisiana bayou to a West Texas ranch, Gaston, the Cajun alligator, learns the skills of a cowhand, riding and roping with the best. Large, color drawings illustrate the light-verse text.

> GASTON LAYS AN OFFSHORE PIPELINE. Gaston, the Cajun alligator, leaves the bayou to lay a pipeline in the Gulf of Mexico. The story is told in light-verse, and colorfully illustrated with double-page drawings.

Rice, James. TEXAS NIGHT BEFORE CHRISTMAS. Pelican Publishing Co., Inc. \$11.95. P, I.

A sesquicentennial-year publication and one of four parodies of Moore's poem by Rice; the others are *A Cajun Night Before Christmas*, *Hillbilly Night Before Christmas*, and *Prairie Night Before Christmas*. This book features the traditional motifs of frontier and pioneer life and of Christmas. Watercolors and black-and-white sketches alternate on double pages.

Roderus, Frank. DUSTER. Texas Christian University Press. \$14.95; \$10.95 paper. I, J.

This fine novel tells the story of a young teenager on his first cattle drive, soon after the Civil War. Duster is hired to help round up wild Longhorns and take them across Texas to the tannery at Rockport. Snakes, storms, and sickness slow the men down on the way, but nothing terrible happens until Duster and another young cowboy are kidnapped by cattle thieves. The story is exciting, amusing, and well told in rich Texas dialect, and gives a good idea of what life on the frontier was like.

Rohmer, Harriet. UNCLE NACHO'S HAT. Children's Press. \$22.95. P, I.

Uncle Nacho is attached to his old hat. Even when his niece, Ambrosia, gives him a new one he's pleased but skeptical. Finally he realizes it's time to push himself to change his style. This is a clever and involving lesson in acceptance of change. The book is illustrated in bold colors and stylized forms that recall Central American folk art. An entertaining story, doubly useful in a bilingual edition.



Seale, Jan. **THE BALLAD OF THE MEN AT MEIR: THE BLACK BEAN EXPEDITION.** Knowing Press. \$7.95. I.

Told in verse, this laid-back approach to the episode is illustrated by Bernice Coleman. In addition to the narrative verse, the book provides a dramatized version for teachers preferring the tale be told as a drama.

Seale, Jan. **DEAF SMITH: THE EYES AND EARS OF THE TEXAS ARMY.** Knowing Press. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P.

Simple line-drawings adorn all the biographies in the Texas History Biography Series. This one tells a simple version of the life of the famous scout and spy for the Texas Army during the Texas Revolution. Though rather lightweight, it is clear and straightforward.

Seale, Jan. **DILUE ROSE: THE GIRL WHO SAW TEXAS INDEPENDENCE.** Knowing Press. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P.

Tells of the adventures of Dilue Rose, an early settler who kept a diary during her youth in Texas. Among other events, she and her family participated in the Runaway Scrape and passed by the battlefield at San Jacinto.

Seale, Jan. **JUAN SEGUIN: THE TEJANO WHO WOULDN'T GIVE UP.** Knowing Press. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P.

This is the story of the Texas patriot of Mexican ancestry, but just briefly touches on the details of his life. A scout and soldier for the Texas Army during the Revolution and later a senator in the Texas congress and mayor of San Antonio, this is a very basic introduction for the very young.

Seale, Jan. **KIAN LONG: THE SLAVE GIRL WHO HELPED START TEXAS.** Knowing Press. \$6.95. P.

This is a welcome look at the life of the slave who worked alongside Jane Long and made it possible for her to be the "Mother of Texas." The authors make a point of showing how well she did, considering she did not choose the long years of waiting for James Long to return to Texas from Mexico, nor the long years of running the foremost boardinghouse in early Texas.

Seale, Jan. **MADAM CANDELARIA: THE NURSE AT THE ALAMO.** Knowing Press. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P.

So slight as to be cute, this book tells the story of the woman who nursed Bowie at the Alamo and survived the attack by Mexican soldiers, going on to become a model citizen of San Antonio.

Seale, Jan. **WILLIAM GOYENS: THE TEXAN WHO SAID NO TO FAILURE.** Knowing Press. \$6.95; \$2.95 paper. P, I.

Another quick biography, this one tells the story of the freed African American in early



Texas who made himself rich by providing needed services and who later studied law to fight off racist challenges to his right to own property. In addition, he spent years negotiating with the Comanches on behalf of the Texas government.

Sebestyen, Ouida. *FAR FROM HOME*. Little, Brown and Co. \$14.95; \$2.95 paper. J, S.

After his mother's death, thirteen-year-old Salty Yeager takes over her job working as a servant in a small-town, East Texas boardinghouse to support his elderly grandmother and himself. The harsh economic realities of the Depression are interwoven with a complex familial relationship as the boy discovers his past and, in the process, matures.

Sebestyen, Ouida. *WORDS BY HEART*. Little, Brown and Co. \$15.95; \$3.95 paper. J.

Hoping for a better life, an African-American family moves to Bethel Springs, Texas, in 1910. Teenage Lena, the strong protagonist, learns about racial prejudice after she wins a scripture-verse contest. Family love, Christian virtue, violence, and death are the themes in this powerful story about a young woman's maturing.

Shannon, George. *THE PINEY WOODS PEDDLER*. Greenwillow Books. \$12.95. P.

Told in the folksong tradition, a jaunty peddler sets out in a rural setting to find a shiny silver dollar for his "dear darling daughter." He makes a series of trades with a barefoot woman, a muleman, a boy with a fine hunting dog, a man with a big, wood stick, a long rattlesnake, and a railroad man. The lively, humorous page-borders complement the text. The only thing missing is the music of the song.

Shefelman, Janice Jordan. *A PARADISE CALLED TEXAS*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I.

In 1845, ten-year-old Mina Jordan and her family leave their home in Germany for a new life in Fredericksburg. She experiences many hardships, including hostile Indians, before happiness comes to her in her new home. This carefully written novel is based on the family stories of the author's ancestors.

Shefelman, Janice. *VICTORIA HOUSE*. Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. P, I.

Rich and beautifully detailed illustrations by the author's husband Tom fill the pages of this pleasant book. An old Victorian house, abandoned in the country, is moved to a town much like Austin and restored by a couple who are architects. Lovers of old houses will enjoy the story. Austinites will enjoy picking out familiar details.

Shefelman, Janice. *WILLOW CREEK HOME*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. I, J.

In the sequel to *A Paradise Called Texas* set in the late 1840s in the Texas Hill Country, Mina and her family move from Fredericksburg to a farm near the Llano River in Comanche country. Twelve-year-old Mina begins to keep a diary and helps with the



birth of her baby brother. A friendly Texas Ranger gives her an Indian horse, Tucan, that she loves to ride. The German immigrant experience is woven into the story of family life and frontier adventure.

Shub, Elizabeth. **THE WHITE STALLION**. Greenwillow Books. \$11.95. P, I.

A young girl, carried away from a pioneer wagon train by an old horse who tries to join a herd of wild horses, is rescued by a great white stallion. This charming, easy-to-read story is based on an historical event and told in the framework of a grandmother telling her granddaughter the story, and then showing the granddaughter the horse-teeth mark on her legs. Rachel Isadora's black-and-white drawings enhance the story.

Silverthorne, Elizabeth. **FIESTA! MEXICO'S GREAT CELEBRATIONS**. Milbrook Press. \$15.40; \$6.95 paper. I, J.

Both the great and small fiestas of Mexico are described, beginning with the historical background that sets the stage for the blending of cultures, making these festivals unique. The author organizes the presentation into religious fiestas, patriotic fiestas, and the local, personal, and national celebrations that are too numerous to count. Included are easy-to-follow directions for making piñatas, God's Eyes, clay pottery, and masks, as well as recipes for tasty fiesta dishes.

*Simond, Ada De Blanc. Ada De Blanc Simond, who died a few years ago, was one of Austin's favorite daughters. An African American whose family moved west to Austin during her childhood, her short books, in the Let's Pretend National History Series, embellish her memories with gentle quasi-fictional accounts. They are annotated in chronological sequence. (The books are out of print at the present time, but can still be found in libraries.)*

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY GO TO TOWN**. The first in the series about a rural African American family at the turn of the century. In this episode the family goes to Austin for the day to shop and do errands. Illustrated with drawings and photographs, the book gives a realistic glimpse of life at that time.

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY ON A WEEKEND IN MAY**. This book finds the family doing their Saturday chores and enjoying the May Day celebration in which younger sister Emmaressa has a major role. The father also teaches the children self-respect and respect for each other.

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY JOIN THE JUNETEENTH CELEBRATION**. This book recalls festivities in honor of Emancipation, including speeches, music, games, and a barbeque. The Knights of Pythias Convention brings more summertime activities.

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY IN THE MERRY, MERRY SEASON**. The fourth book in the series highlights family and community activities during the Thanksgiving and Christmas holidays, and visits to an orphanage and to an "old folks' home."

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY AND THE FIRST WEDDING OF THE YEAR**. The fifth book in the series tells of preparations for a January wedding, including sewing



a friendship quilt as a gift.

> **MAE DEE AND HER FAMILY TEN YEARS LATER.** The sixth book in the series, winner of a special award from the Texas Historical Commission, relates the death of Emmaessa, brother Charley joining the army during "The Great War," and Mae Dee beginning her teaching career in 1922 after graduating from Prairie View A&M.

Sinclair, Dorothy Tutt. **TALES OF THE TEXIANS.** Dorothy Sinclair Enterprises. \$14.95; \$9.95 paper; teacher's guide \$4.95.

The book features twenty-two stories about the historical giants whose memories are perpetuated in and out of the classroom. Lorenzo de Zavala, William Travis, Jane Long, and Jim Bowie are among the personalities whose lives are written for children to read or listen to. The book has forty illustrations by Harris Milam.

Smyrl, Frank Herbert. **POLEY MORGAN: SON OF A TEXAS SCALAWAG.** Texas State Historical Association. \$2.00. I, J.

Smyrl writes about his grandfather's youth in a carefully researched novel of rural life in Smith County during Reconstruction. Poley had to run the family farm after his father was killed in 1870.

Sorenson, Jody. **THE SECRET LETTERS OF MAMA CAT.** Walker and Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Twelve-year-old Meredith's life is turned upside down when her grandmother dies, her family moves from Chicago to San Antonio, and her sister leaves to attend the School for the Deaf in Austin. In her loneliness Meredith writes letters to her dead grandmother, then begins to make friends. Issues of loneliness, adolescence, and the handicapped are handled sensitively, and the dialogue rings true.

Spellman, Paul. **RACE TO VELASCO.** Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. I.

Set in a less familiar period of Texas history, this is the tale of Henry Woods and Antonio Gonzales setting out for adventure with rebel Texans at the Battle of Velasco, just prior to the Texas Revolution.

Stem, Jacqueline. **THE HAUNTED TUNNEL.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$11.95. I.

When the Whittaker family arrived in Jefferson, Texas, after the Civil War, eleven-year-old Rip finds more excitement than he expected. Befriending a street child, he is bullied by other students at school who put him in an abandoned tunnel once used by runaway slaves. An explosive confrontation answers questions the citizens of Jefferson had long asked.

Teague, Wells. **THEO, THE INDIAN FIGHTER.** Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I.

Theo, the orneriest mule in Texas, and Gus McCormack, his thirteen-year-old friend,



experience the Corn Train Massacre. This fictional story set in northwest Texas is based on the Salt Creek Massacre of 1871. The frontier adventure includes rattlesnakes and Kiowa Indians. The book contains a bibliography and a glossary.

Templeton, Lee. **ALBERT GERONIMO**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$8.95. I.

Albert is an alligator that the narrator's animal-loving brother Pat finds and raises after the boy who brought it to Texas from Florida abandons it. Albert, once grown, proves far from tame, and he provides a number of adventures for the boys until they are forced to get rid of him. The only real fault of the lively novel is the implausible length of time they are able to keep him, as much trouble as he causes. Pat is a character based on the author's own brother, who died at nineteen, and the story has a touching quality of love.

Tolliver, Ruby C. **BLIND BESS, BUDDY, AND ME**. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$12.95. I, J.

Gus Roundtree and his cousin, Buddy, move to their grandparents' East Texas farm during the Depression. Together, despite sharing no feeling of friendliness, they have to cope with farm chores, helped by Blind Bess, the aged mule. The book paints an excellent picture of rural Texas life during those hard times, showing how children contrived to fill the hours despite the absence of contemporary forms of entertainment. Illustrated by Lyle Miller.

Tolliver, Ruby C. **BOOMER'S KIDS**. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. J.

Although Andy and his sister grow up at the turn of the century, during the Spindletop oil boom near Beaumont in southeast Texas, their lives have many parallels with today's young people. The work is hard, but family life is rich and pleasurable. Well researched from a historical viewpoint, as well as being a good tale, the book is illustrated and designed by Lyle Miller.

Tolliver, Ruby C. **HAVE GUN—NEED BULLETS**. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95; \$10.95 paper. I, J.

A glimpse at twentieth-century history in East Texas, the book is set in San Augustine County in 1934. A fourteen-year-old orphan is grief-stricken when his favorite teacher is brutally shot. Seeking revenge, he finds an old gun, and works to afford bullets. He then begins to realize the implication of his intent.

Tolliver, Ruby C. **MUDDY BANKS**. Texas Christian University Press; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

The Texas Civil War Battle of Sabine Pass in 1863 is the historical event incorporated into this well-written novel. Widow Banks takes in a twelve-year-old runaway slave and names him Muddy Boy Banks. The Yankee widow teaches Muddy to help her with the baking she does for a living, and intends to free him when it is safe to do so, but in the meantime she is a stern but kind taskmaster. A Cajun boy, Jo Bear, becomes friends with Muddy; the two speak in modified regional dialects that add local flavor to the story.



Details of civilian life and of the military battle woven into an intriguing story make this entertaining, worthwhile reading.

Townsend, Tom. **BATTLE OF GALVESTON**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$5.95 paper. I.

This exciting Civil War tale, based on an 1862 battle, concerns a Texas boy fighting alongside his father on a steamship to break a Yankee blockade of Galveston. The dialogue rings true, as do the descriptions of battle. Includes a glossary of terms.

Townsend, Tom. **DAVY CROCKETT: AN AMERICAN HERO**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media.; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$5.95 paper. I.

This story of Crockett's life begins three hours before dawn on the day of the Battle of the Alamo. The hero's life is seen in flashbacks to earlier periods; legends about Crockett are also included. The issue of how Crockett died (whether he was executed) is discussed in an author's note, citing eight eyewitness accounts. Bibliography and index.

Townsend, Tom. **A FAIR WIND TO GLORY**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95; \$6.95 paper. J, S.

Santa Anna's army moves north, and the Republic of Texas prepares for battle. Aaron Baldare is a young man with a chip on his shoulder, promoted at the age of eighteen to the rank of third lieutenant on the *Liberty*, the Texas Navy's newly commissioned schooner-of-war. This is a spirited sea-story, cleverly developed with early diaries and official sea records of the period

Townsend, Tom. **POWDERHORN PASSAGE: SEQUEL TO WHERE THE PIRATES ARE**. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$10.95. I, J.

In a sequel to *Where the Pirates Are* and *Dark Ships*, the three children again become involved with Jean Lafitte and have dangerous adventures with other pirates and a shipment of Colt revolvers. In 1844 Galveston the three board the steamship *Powderhorn* in search of Talva's father, and find him in a surprising way. The characters are fictitious, but the places and some of the events are based on historical fact.

Tunbo, Frances. **STAY PUT, ROBBIE McAMIS**. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$15.95. I.

This tale of wilderness Texas in 1848 allows twelve-year-old Robbie to become a hero, helping his stranded Grammie and five helpless children when they are separated from the rest of the family in a wagon-train accident. Pre-teen students will enjoy identifying with the heroic nineteenth-century protagonist.

Turner, Kathryn. **AT THE BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO WITH RIP CAVITT**. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I.

This is a short but exciting book that offers an interesting slant on the pivotal Battle of San Jacinto.



Tusa, Tricia. *STAY AWAY FROM THE JUNKYARD!* Macmillan. \$14.95; \$4.95 paper. P.

This lively picture book tells of a gangly girl visiting her aunt in Jasper, Texas. With the title's warning still ringing in her ears, Theo drives into the junkyard, makes a friend, and shows the town wrong in its prejudice against junk and the junkman. The story is a little facile, but the color illustrations are bright and funny.

Venable, Fay. *NORTH TO THE RIO GRANDE: LORENZO DE ZAVALA.* Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$5.95. I.

This is a fictionalized life-story of Lorenzo de Zavala, supporter of the Texas Revolution, and signer of the Declaration of Texas Independence. He became the first vice-president of the Republic.

Von Rosenberg, Marjorie. *ELISABET NEY: SCULPTOR OF AMERICAN HEROES.* Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. I, J.

Illustrated by the author, this graceful biography provides enough information about the German sculptor who settled in Austin to encourage even adults to find out more. The book details Ney's life and her work, including the statues she created of legendary Texas figures.

Von Rosenberg, Marjorie. *MAX AND MARTHA, THE TWINS OF FREDERICKSBURG.* Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$7.95. P, I.

An example of cross-cultural learning for young students who can read about the twin children of a Hill Country artist in nineteenth-century Texas. The text is presented in English and German on facing pages. It has a bilingual glossary and a pronunciation guide.

Wade, Mary D. *AUSTIN, THE SON BECOMES FATHER.* Colophon House; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$4.95 paper. I, J.

Recounts the life of the quiet, cultured statesman who carried out his father's dream of bringing settlers to Texas, and became the father of Texas.

Wade, Mary D. *CABEZA DE VACA, CONQUISTADOR WHO CARED.* Colophon House; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$4.95 paper. I, J.

The story of Cabeza de Vaca and his three companions who walked across much of the North American continent in the 1530s, suffering incredible hardships to discover a land unknown to Europeans.

Wade, Mary D. *DAVID CROCKETT: SURE HE WAS RIGHT.* Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$11.95. I.

This fully illustrated chapter book traces the life of Crockett from his early days in eastern Tennessee to his heroic death at the Alamo. The biography is illustrated by Pat Finney, and includes a list of other books about Crockett.



Wade, Mary D. *EASTER FIRES*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95. P, I.

The legend of the Easter fires of Fredericksburg grew over the early years of German settlement as adults fancifully explained to children the campfires built by Native Americans in the surrounding hills. The forty-eight-page book is illustrated throughout.

Wade, Mary D. *ESTEVAN, WALKING ACROSS TEXAS*. Colophon House; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$10.95; \$4.95 paper. I, J.

Tells of the dark-skinned slave who crossed the American Southwest with Cabeza de Vaca but died at Hawikuh scouting a route for Coronado to find the Seven Cities of Gold.

Wade, Mary D. *I AM HOUSTON*. Colophon House. \$10.95; \$4.95 paper. I, J.

Captures the life of the colorful Hero of San Jacinto. *Booklist* called the volumes "fascinating to young biography readers."

Wade, Mary D. *I'M GOING TO TEXAS: YO VOY A TEJAS*. Colophon House. \$12.95; \$4.95 paper. I, J.

The child in this volume is convinced that Texas is all cowboys. The mother explains that Texas is so much more. Stunning graphics and rhymed English text with Spanish translation are accompanied by text boxes that reveal many places to explore in this great state.

Wade, Mary D. *MILK, MEAT, BISCUITS AND THE TERRAQUEOUS MACHINE: THE STORY OF GAIL BORDEN*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$9.95. I, J.

Gail Borden, a friend of Stephen F. Austin, arrived in Texas in 1829. He drew the first topographic map of Texas, published the first permanent newspaper, and printed the Texas Declaration of Independence. This fictionalized biography tells of Borden's role in the Texas Revolution and in early Galveston, his many failed experiments, and his success in selling condensed milk. Reference aids are a glossary and a list of adult sources.

Ward, Dorys. *MIKE'S OIL PATCH*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$11.95. I.

The book homes in on a vital element in twentieth-century Texas history, the story of oil. Children are introduced to the terminology of the oil industry. The information is given in a fictional setting when Mike Shannon, eager to build a "pump jack" for a science project, learns from his retired "oil boomer" grandfather.

Webber, Earlynne. *THE SECRET OF THE BIG THICKET*. Eakin Publications, Inc./Sunbelt Media. \$12.95. I.

This mystery is played out during the Civil War. It takes place in the fifty-mile swath of the Big Thicket forest in southeast Texas. Davey Merriwether knows the land where he



has always lived, but cannot explain who is taking the food and provisions from the family cabin. Then, in 1863, the pace changes as the war draws explosively close to the Thicket.

Williams, Jeanne. *TAME THE WILD STALLION*. Texas Christian University Press; Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95; \$8.95 paper. I, J.

Winner of the 1957 Texas Institute of Letters-Cokesbury Book Store Award, this book was first published by Prentice-Hall in 1957. The Mitchells plan to sell the mustangs they have captured to the Army and head to California during the 1849 gold rush, but fifteen-year-old Joe falls asleep in night watch, and the herd is stolen. He tries to recapture it by following it across the border. Instead he is held by Don Enrique, a large hacienda owner whose son had been killed at the battle of Chapultepec in 1847. The young Texan stays true to his own ideas while learning to appreciate Mexican culture. The book is still worth reading.

Wisler G. Clifton. *THE RAID*. Puffin. \$3.99. I, J.

Lige, a fourteen-year-old Anglo, and Zeke, an ex-slave, journey from the Trinity River into Indian Territory to rescue Lige's brother and Zeke's wife. An exciting story of life on the frontier in the 1860s is portrayed in this adventure in spite of some inconsistencies of detail.

Wood, Jane Roberts. *THE TRAIN TO ESTELLINE*. Ellen C. Temple. \$19.95. J, S, A.

Early this century Lucy Richards left her home in East Texas to travel west and teach in a one-room schoolhouse on the Texas frontier. The tale is humorously told.

Yancey, Diane. *CAMELS FOR UNCLE SAM*. Hendrick-Long Publishing Co. \$14.95. I, J.

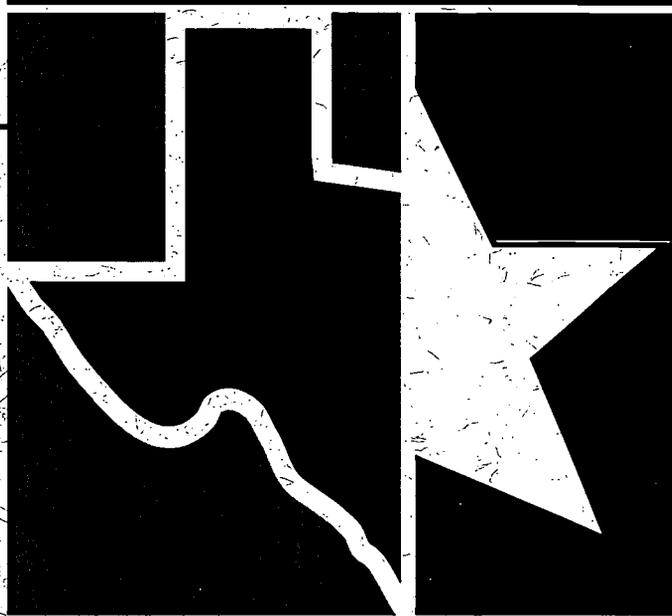
This is one of those books where fact is agreeably more fascinating than fiction. During the 1850s the army introduced camels to Texas, forming the U.S. Camel Corps, which lasted until 1860. The absence of camels roaming our western reaches now attests to the less-than-successful inspiration. Illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

Zeplin, Zeno. *GREAT TEXAS CHRISTMAS LEGENDS*. Nel-Mar. \$15.95; \$7.95 paper. I, J.

Five sentimental, seasonal stories are set in various parts of Texas. "The Elf's Cap" is in Galveston in 1883; "The Charge of the Elf's Brigade" takes place around the Lucky Star Mine; "Whee-Whoo The Whistle" is about a train running between San Antonio and Port Lavaca; "Feathers and Bells" is about a man helping an Indian in the Texas high country; and "The Great Christmas Turnabout" takes place on a shrimp boat in the Gulf of Mexico.



# NOTES



**Bibliographic Guide  
to Texas History  
for Teachers**



## *Bibliographic Guide to Texas History for Teachers*



*The following annotated bibliography for Texas history teachers corresponds to the topic outline of most Texas history texts and represents a basic compilation of Texas history scholarship. Leading scholars at colleges and universities were asked to recommend books in their fields that they thought would be of greatest benefit to teachers. The following titles, the "classics" of Texas history, represent the majority selection. Please note, that with two exceptions, all the works cited below are still in print. Please also note that several selections are largely national in scope with only limited application to Texas and its historic development.*

*An excellent supplement to monographic works on Texas is the Southwestern Historical Quarterly. Since it began publication in 1897, the Quarterly has represented the best Texas history scholarship and has been the major source for most of the textbook accounts of Texas. A four-volume cumulative index covering the years from 1897 to 1977, as well as back issues of the Quarterly, are available from the Texas State Historical Association.*

### *General Survey Books on Texas History*



Calvert, Robert A. and Arnoldo De León. THE HISTORY OF TEXAS. Arlington Heights: Harlan-Davidson, Inc., 1990. \$32.95; \$12.95 paper.

In this volume the authors present a thorough and detailed study of Texas history from earliest contact with prior civilizations to the present, giving balanced accounts of each era. But equally important, they provide an insightful social history, especially in regard to women, African Americans, and Mexican Americans. The factual data are interesting and informative, the interpretations are logical, and the writing is clear and concise.



McComb, David G. *TEXAS: A MODERN HISTORY*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1989. \$24.95; \$12.95 paper.

McComb, who has written impressive urban biographies of Houston and Galveston, presents an overview of Texas from the earliest inhabitants to the present. In discussing the different periods of Texas history, McComb "wishes to probe into the ethos of a people, taste the unique flavor of the culture, and experience the rhythm of development." His emphasis is on Texas in the twentieth century; anecdotes, folklore, and historical events enrich his study. In a concluding chapter he examines the Texas mystique.

Procter, Ben and Archie P. McDonald, editors. *THE TEXAS HERITAGE: SECOND EDITION*. Arlington Heights: Harlan-Davidson, Inc., 1992. \$14.95 paper.

This new edition, like its predecessor, is a collection of essays, the first ten of which detail the history of Texas in chronological order. A topical format is then used for coverage of the Tejano experience, the civil rights movement, and women. Also included are essays on some items more uniquely Texan: cowboys, the oil and gas industry, the Texas Rangers, and sports. Although the authors of these essays offer little that is new in the way of research, most offer a good synthesis on his period of specialization. A brief bibliography at the end of each chapter offers suggestions for those wanting to do additional reading.

### *Texas: The Land and Its Resources*



Doughty, Robin W. *AT HOME IN TEXAS: EARLY VIEWS OF THE LAND*. College Station: Texas A&M University Press, 1987. \$17.95

A thoughtful and thought-provoking analysis of the geographic images of Texas from the era of the *empresario* grants until the Civil War. Doughty concentrates on how American-born and European settlers in Texas evolved perceptions of Texas as a "place" that denoted specific symbolic geographic meanings, not only for Texans but also for other Americans and Europeans.

Jordan, Terry G., with John L. Bean Jr. and William M. Holmes. *TEXAS: A GEOGRAPHY*. Boulder, Colo.: Westview Press, 1984. \$36; \$18 paper.

This topical geography looks at the state's bountiful variety; its environmental and demographic patterns; cultural, religious, and ethnic groups; dialects and languages; agriculture; industry; and rural and urban configurations. It reveals Texas to be many instead of one, celebrates its diversity, and points to a multitude of reasons why the Lone Star State is one of the fastest rising stars in the Sun Belt.



## *The Indians and Prehistoric Inhabitants of Texas*



Newcomb, William W., Jr. THE INDIANS OF TEXAS: FROM PREHISTORIC TO MODERN TIMES. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1961. \$29.95; 12.95 paper.

An invaluable reference source for both the historian and the anthropologist. This work, unlike many studies of American Indians that center on the conflict of the races, emphasizes the ethnographic characteristics of the various tribes that have inhabited Texas since prehistoric times. This work will help students understand the social patterns and values of Indian cultures, which are often misunderstood.

## *Exploration and Early Settlement*



Chipman, Donald E. SPANISH TEXAS, 1519–1821. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1992. \$30; \$14.95 paper.

This synthesis of the Spanish experience and its legacies in Texas begins with an entertaining account of what would become modern Texas. Chapters two through eleven are arranged chronologically and begin with a brief synopsis of topics treated. These include discovery, exploration, and conquest impelled by mixed spiritual and material motives, as well as the slower and less dramatic expansion after 1543. This remarkable study succeeds in dispelling "the misguided notion" that the colonial period "is a colorful but largely irrelevant chapter in Texas's past."

## *Anglo-American Colonization*



Barker, Eugene C. THE LIFE OF STEPHEN F. AUSTIN: FOUNDER OF TEXAS, 1793–1836. Austin: Texas State Historical Association, 1949; Austin: University of Texas Press, 1969. \$19.95; \$8.95 paper.

This biography of Stephen F. Austin has stood since its publication in 1926 as one of the outstanding works in the field of Texas history. Eugene C. Barker, a long-time historian at the University of Texas, spent many years researching, collecting, and publishing *The Austin Papers*, on which the biography is based. The book's subtitle, *A Chapter in the*



*Westward Movement of the Anglo-American People*, indicates Barker's perspective on Austin's colonizing enterprise in Texas and suggests the author's description of Austin as "one of the great figures of American history." For the period from 1821, when his first colonists came to Texas, to 1836, when Austin died while serving as secretary of state for the Republic, Barker's biography remains the standard work.

### *The Texas Revolution*



Binkley, William C. *THE TEXAS REVOLUTION*. Austin: Texas State Historical Association, 1979. \$12.95.

An interpretive study of the process leading to the Texas Revolution. Binkley describes the economic, social, and political problems which caused misunderstanding. He also traces the steps by which, in one brief twelve-month period, the Texans proceeded from their initial purpose of driving the Mexican soldiers from their province, through an intermediate stage of defending the Mexican federal system, to the final objective of complete independence. Originally published in 1952, the work was reprinted by the TSHA in 1979.

De la Peña, José Enrique. *WITH SANTA ANNA IN TEXAS: A PERSONAL NARRATIVE OF THE REVOLUTION*. College Station: Texas A&M University Press, 1975. \$12.50.

José Enrique de la Peña, a subordinate official who traveled to Texas with Santa Anna, wrote an eyewitness account of the events from February to August 1836. This translation of his diary helps tell the Mexican side of the Texas Revolution. De la Peña had no dealings with the Texan spokesman and, therefore, was not trying to placate anyone. In recording events "as they took place," he praises William B. Travis and James W. Fannin, who acted bravely, though perhaps unwisely in military situations; yet he denounces as pirates those Americans who coveted Mexican soil. In turn, he criticizes his superiors, especially Santa Anna, while admiring General José Urrea. Also impressive are his accounts describing his revulsion at the senseless slaying of Texans at Goliad and at Santa Anna's useless sacrifice of Mexican soldiers to appease his own vanity.

Kilgore, Dan. *HOW DID DAVY DIE?* (Out of print.)

In the *Essays on the American West Series*. A revised and expanded version of Dan Kilgore's 1977 presidential address to the Texas State Historical Association. According to legend (and some historians), Davy Crockett fought to his last breath before falling victim to an overwhelming force of Mexicans at the Alamo in 1836. But Kilgore asserts convincingly that Crockett was either captured or surrendered, and taken with a few other prisoners to Santa Anna, who instantly had them executed.

---

Lack, Paul D. *THE TEXAS REVOLUTIONARY EXPERIENCE: A POLITICAL AND SOCIAL HISTORY, 1835-1836*. College Station: Texas A&M University Press, 1992. \$39.95.

Although many books deal with the military campaigns of the Revolution, this is one of the few works that looks at the internal political and social history of the years 1835 and 1836. Lack believes that colonial Texans were, for the most part, reluctant revolutionists. He argues that as late as November, 1835, most were content with Mexican statehood. Ultimately, however, Anglo feelings of racial supremacy doomed a Texas-Mexican Federalist alliance and contributed to the desire for independence. Lack's work is also one of the few that discusses the role played by *Tejanos* and slaves in the Revolution.

### *The Republic of Texas*



Hogan, William Ransom. *THE TEXAS REPUBLIC: A SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC HISTORY*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1969. \$12.95.

One of the most informative and entertaining books in Texas historiography, this work examines the way people of the Republic lived, their economic and political attitudes, and their customs. This book is indispensable for those interested in the development of the Texas character.

### *Early Statehood*



Friend, Llerena. *SAM HOUSTON: THE GREAT DESIGNER*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1954. \$8.95.

In the Texas History Paperbacks Series. Sam Houston is sometimes erroneously presented as merely the hero of San Jacinto and twice-president of the Republic of Texas. Underemphasized and often overlooked are Houston's roles in national politics as U.S. congressman and governor of Tennessee, and U.S. senator and governor of Texas. This biography places Houston in national politics, first as a Jacksonian Democrat and later as a unionist and aspirant to the U.S. presidency. This study, therefore, covers Texas history only as it pertains to Houston's national career. The book goes far in drawing Texas into the mainstream of U.S. history.



## *Secession and the Civil War*



Buenger, Walter Louis. *SECESSION AND THE UNION IN TEXAS*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1984. \$17.50.

Secession in Texas, as in most of the other Confederate states, was a complicated process. While the secession ordinance was approved by a three-to-one margin in the February 1861 referendum, affection for the Union was both deeper and broader than numbers would indicate. This book describes the sources of that unionist sentiment and the manner in which pro-secession forces gained control over public opinion and governmental power. It is based on wide research in primary and secondary sources and is the best work on Texas secession yet published.

Campbell, Randolph B. *AN EMPIRE FOR SLAVERY: THE PECULIAR INSTITUTION IN TEXAS, 1821-1865*. Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University Press, 1989. \$35.

For those who think of Texas as only a marginal slave state on the eve of the Civil War, and as therefore more western than southern, this book will make for disconcerting reading. Indeed, Campbell emphasizes the importance of slavery to the first Anglo-American settlers in Mexican Texas, including Stephen F. Austin, who concluded in 1833 that "Texas *must be* a slave country." In 1835-1836 Anglo-Texans often justified their revolution against Mexico with arguments that anticipated what secessionist Southerners would say in 1860-1861 as they called for independence from the United States. Although only twenty-seven percent of the state's families in 1860 owned slaves, Campbell concludes that "political life in antebellum Texas existed entirely within a proslavery consensus" in large part because "most nonslaveholders apparently recognized that owning slaves was a measure of financial success and wanted to hold bondsmen themselves."

## *Reconstruction*



Ramsdell, Charles W. *RECONSTRUCTION IN TEXAS*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1970. \$8.95.

Since its publication in 1910, this volume has been the standard work on Reconstruction in Texas. Covering the period from 1865 to 1874, the study centers primarily on the political trends and events of Reconstruction. Ramsdell, who taught for many years at the University of Texas at Austin, explains how Texas served the Confederacy, and explores the unique characteristics, caused by special frontier conditions in the state, of the role Texas played in the War and in Reconstruction. The reader should keep in mind that Ramsdell's work does not, of course, reflect the



emendations of later revisionist historians. This volume, therefore, should be read in conjunction with Stamp's *The Era of Reconstruction*.

Stamp, Kenneth M. THE ERA OF RECONSTRUCTION, 1865-1877. New York: Random House, 1965. \$3.95.

For several decades historians have taken second looks into the reconstruction of the Union after the Civil War and have often reached conclusions widely different from those, like Ramsdell's, that were written in the early years of the twentieth century. Stamp's volume is an interpretive survey of Reconstruction based on the revisionist scholarship. He concludes that the fourteenth and fifteenth amendments to the Constitution could only have come under the circumstances of Reconstruction and that the mistakes of that period were a small price to pay.

### *The Late Nineteenth Century*



Procter, Ben H. NOT WITHOUT HONOR: THE LIFE OF JOHN H. REAGAN. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1962. \$7.95.

Any biography of John H. Reagan necessarily involves a discussion of many of the major political events of the middle and late nineteenth century. After working his way to prominence in state politics, Reagan became postmaster general and treasurer of the Confederacy and later played a leading role in framing our present state constitution. During his tenure in the U.S. House of Representatives, Reagan coauthored the Interstate Commerce Act of 1887, and while serving in the U.S. Senate, he agreed to become the first chairman of the powerful Texas Railroad Commission. Procter, who teaches at Texas Christian University, has written a generally apologetic book that is well organized and easily read.

Spratt, John Stricklin. THE ROAD TO SPINDLETOP: ECONOMIC CHANGES IN TEXAS, 1875-1901. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1985. \$9.95.

Few periods of Texas history witnessed more changes and greater growth than the late nineteenth century. By the end of the century Texas had moved from an agrarian wilderness to the beginnings of the industrial age which was ushered in by Spindletop. The economic trends involving the growth of labor unions, the Grange, the advent of the railroad, and the major contributors to the Texas economy, such as cattle and cotton, are discussed in this volume, which has been revised and reprinted by the University of Texas Press.

Woodward, C. Vann. THE ORIGINS OF THE NEW SOUTH, 1877-1913. Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University Press, 1951; revised edition, 1971. \$27.50; \$14.95 paper.

Published originally in 1951 as Volume IX of the History of the South Series, *Origins of*



*the New South* was immediately heralded as a monumental contribution to southern history and as an essential background for understanding the South (and Texas) in the post-Civil War period. Although some historians have revised some of Woodward's interpretations, the work still stands as one of the masterpieces of contemporary historical literature.

### *Impact of the Frontier*



Webb, Walter Prescott. *THE GREAT PLAINS*. Boston: Ginn and Co., 1931; Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1981. \$12.95.

Walter Prescott Webb, professor of history at the University of Texas at Austin until his death in 1963, was one of the best-known authors in the Southwest. This, Webb's most famous work, proposed a new interpretation of the American West. *The Great Plains* deals with the effects upon American civilization as it moved westward to a plains environment characterized by a flat surface, without trees and without an abundance of water, and it describes how this new milieu dramatically reshaped American traditions and institutions. Although historians later refined several of Webb's points, the book still stands as one of the most important works in American historiography.

### *Ranching and the Cattle Industry*



Adams, Andy. *THE LOG OF A COWBOY: A NARRATIVE OF THE OLD TRAIL DAYS*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin and Co., 1903; Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1964. \$4.95 paper.

Generally regarded as one of the best chronicles of the late-nineteenth-century cattle business, this volume was published in 1903, and describes Adams's experiences during his decade on the cattle trails, centering on a drive in 1882 from Texas to Montana. Contrary to the popular "wild west" stories, Adams's description preserves an authentic, accurate account of the drives and the people associated with them. No industry was more important than cattle to Texas in the years following the Civil War, and although many books have followed Adams, none have contributed more than this account.



Holden, William C. *THE ESPUELA LAND AND CATTLE COMPANY: A STUDY OF A FOREIGN-OWNED RANCH IN TEXAS*. Austin: Texas State Historical Association, 1970. \$14.95.

The key to the late-nineteenth-century era of big business was the great abundance of natural resources. In Texas the plentiful commodities were land and cattle, and the Spur Ranch, with almost a half million acres in Dickens, Kent, Crosby, and Garza Counties, was an outstanding example of bigness. Owned by the Espuela (Spanish for "spur") Land and Cattle Company, a London-based investment enterprise, the ranch's history is itself a study in western development and the strong ties between people and the land, as well as a study of big-business techniques in Western America. The book is well organized, well written, and still remains a classic in western ranch studies.

### *Texas in the Twentieth Century*



Brown, Norman D. *HOOD, BONNET, AND LITTLE BROWN JUG: TEXAS POLITICS, 1921-1928*. College Station: Texas A&M University Press, 1983. \$29.50.

This work deals with Texas politics during the years between the end of World War I and the beginning of the Great Depression. The symbols of the title refer to the Ku Klux Klan, Mrs. Miriam Ferguson, and Prohibition, which were the principal political issues of the decade. Based on impressive research, the work concentrates on the political rather than the social and economic events of the Twenties.

Gould, Lewis L. *PROGRESSIVES AND PROHIBITIONISTS: TEXAS DEMOCRATS IN THE WILSON ERA*. Austin: Texas State Historical Association, 1992. \$19.95 paper.

In this well-researched and clearly written study, Gould describes and analyzes Texas politics during the Wilson era. It is the author's thesis that the issue of prohibition permeated and colored every question which arose during this period and largely shaped the development of politics in Texas. The reform leaders of that era believed that prohibition was the most important achievement that would bring honesty, efficiency, and morality to public life. Regardless of the issue at hand, Gould believes the wet/dry question was never far below the surface. It was the unifying theme of the entire era.

Green, George Norris. *THE ESTABLISHMENT IN TEXAS POLITICS: THE PRIMITIVE YEARS, 1938-1957*. Westport, Conn.: Greenwood Press, 1979. \$22.50.

For those who consider themselves conservatives, this volume will not be pleasurable reading. Green, a history professor at the University of Texas at Arlington, levels a strong indictment against those who ruled the state politically from 1938 to 1957. He supports



his thesis with voluminous evidence which elaborates on segregation, antilabor laws, political demagoguery, and anti-intellectualism, as well as blatant chicanery and public corruption. In fact, the book's subtitle, *The Primitive Years, 1938–1957*, adequately reflects the subject matter.

*Texas in the Late Twentieth Century: Social and Economic Problems*



Barr, Alwyn. BLACK TEXANS: A HISTORY OF NEGROES IN TEXAS, 1528–1971. (Out of print.)

This volume recounts the discrimination, violence, and economic and political exploitation that black Texans have suffered at the hands of the white majority throughout the history of the state. The author also records the achievements of African American Texans in many fields in spite of obstacles with which they had to contend. The work is organized chronologically into chapters and each chapter is subdivided internally along the following topical lines: politics, violence, and legal status; labor and economic status; education; and social life.

Dallek, Robert. LONE STAR RISING: LYNDON JOHNSON AND HIS TIMES, 1908–1960. New York: Oxford University Press, 1991. \$22.50.

With this first installment of a projected two-volume study, Dallek examines Johnson's life through his election to the vice-presidency in 1960. This book is an old-fashioned biography. Dallek does not overlook Johnson's shortcomings or his indulgence in political corruption, but the author's main concern is explaining Johnson's success and failure as a political leader. That public record is, after all, the most important reason for remembering Lyndon Johnson. Dallek also carefully reconstructs the changing political environment in which Johnson operated from the time of his arrival in Washington as a congressional aide in December 1931 through his service as Democratic majority leader in the Senate in the 1950s. The reader comes to understand the issues that Johnson addressed, the political circumstances that encouraged and constrained his actions, the range of choices available to him, and the ways in which he maneuvered to reshape this political environment to suit his own purposes. As the subtitle of the book indicates, Dallek is determined to place Johnson in "His Times." The scope of Dallek's achievement as a biographer becomes apparent when one compares and contrasts his study with the strategies of Johnson's other leading biographers: Doris Kearns Goodwin, Ronnie Dugger, and Robert Caro. Each of these writers contributes to our understanding of Johnson's personality and career, but they all turn to different forms of determinism—psychological or cultural or (in Caro's case) genetic—to explain Johnson's behavior. As a result, they create one-dimensional portraits of this incredibly complex politician.



De León, Arnaldo. *THEY CALLED THEM GREASERS: ANGLO ATTITUDES TOWARDS MEXICANS IN TEXAS, 1821-1900*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1983. \$19.95; \$8.95 paper.

De León traces certain themes in Anglo perceptions of Mexicans over nearly a century of Texas history, noting changes as well as continuities in such views. It is an unpleasant journey as the author offers a litany of examples that demonstrate the overriding tendency of Anglo-Texans to perceive Mexicans in generally negative, if not virulent, terms. De León arranges his chapters around these racist Anglo perceptions of Tejanos, who are seen as radically inferior, indolent, morally deficient, disloyal, and as, essentially, unequal to whites. The author provides a powerful, convincing corrective to the distorted views of Mexicans found in the standard historical works by Eugene C. Barker, Walter Prescott Webb, and Rupert N. Richardson.

Montejano, David. *ANGLOS AND MEXICANS IN THE MAKING OF TEXAS, 1836-1986*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1987. \$29.95; \$12.95 paper.

Montejano's study is the most comprehensive and insightful history of Anglo-Mexican relations in Texas yet written. Its most important contribution is its documentation of the class structure in South Texas through the 1920s and its analysis of the role that class and property played in how and to what extent Anglos subjugated the Mexican population. The author shows clearly that Texas Mexicans were victimized perhaps as much by insidious legalistic maneuverings as they were by the violence for which the state is infamous.

### *Women in Texas*



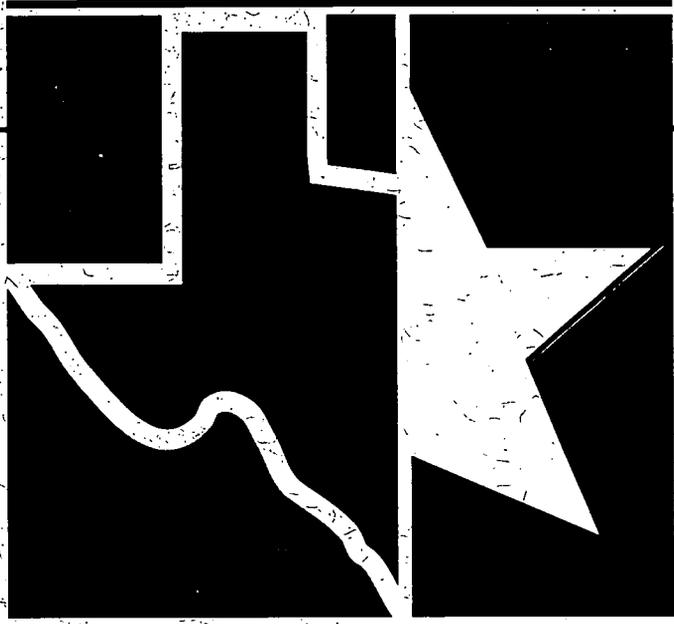
Although the definitive history of women in Texas has yet to be written, there are a number of works that contain biographical sketches of prominent Texas women. See *WOMEN AND TEXAS HISTORY*; *WOMEN IN EARLY TEXAS*; *WOMEN IN TEXAS: THEIR LIVES, THEIR EXPERIENCES, THEIR ACCOMPLISHMENTS*; *WE CAN FLY: STORIES OF KATHERINE STINSON AND OTHER GUTSY TEXAS WOMEN*; and *LEGENDARY LADIES OF TEXAS*. Annotations of these works on Texas women appear in the Resource and Reference Books section of this Guide.



# NOTES

146

132



**Distributors**



## List of Distributors



AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR STATE  
AND LOCAL HISTORY  
AltaMira Press Order Dept.  
1630 North Main Street, Suite 367  
Walnut Creek, CA 94596  
Tel: 510/938-7243  
Fax: 510/933-9720

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE  
1220 L Street, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20005  
Tel: 202/682-8000

ARCHIMEDIA INTERACTIVE  
2828 Routh Street, Suite 695  
Dallas, TX 75201  
Tel: 1/800-9-ALAMO  
Fax: 214/871-3365

ASSOCIATED EDUCATORS  
609 Lakeside Drive  
Irving, TX 75062

AUSTIN *AMERICAN STATESMAN*  
P.O. Box 670  
Austin, TX 78767  
Tel: 512/445-3590

BANTAM DOUBLEDAY, DELL  
PUBLISHING GROUP  
414 E. Gulf Road  
Des Plaines, IL 60016  
Tel: 312/827-1111

W. S. BENSON AND COMPANY  
P.O. Box 1866  
Austin, TX 78767  
Tel: 800/835-2197  
Fax: 512/476-5061

BUREAU OF BUSINESS RESEARCH  
P.O. Box 7459  
University of Texas  
Austin, TX 78713-7459  
Tel: 512/471-1616  
Fax: 512/471-1063

BUREAU OF ECONOMIC GEOLOGY  
University of Texas  
Austin, TX 78713-7508  
Tel: 512/471-1534  
Fax: 512/471-0140

CAPTIONED FILM/VIDEO PROGRAM  
5000 Park Street North  
St. Petersburg, FL 33709  
Tel: 800/237-6231, voice and TTY

CAYO DEL GRULLO PRESS  
c/o History Department  
Texas A&M University at Kingsville  
Kingsville, TX 78363  
Tel: 512/595-3608

CENTER FOR BIG BEND STUDIES  
Sul Ross State University  
Alpine, TX 79832  
Tel: 915/837-8179



CHELSEA HOUSE  
300 Park Ave. South  
New York, NY 10010-5313  
Tel: 800/848-2665

CHILDREN'S PRESS  
attn.: Trade Operation  
P.O. Box 1332  
Danbury, CT 06813  
Tel: 800/621-1115  
Fax: 800/374-4329

COLOPHON HOUSE  
10700 Richmond, Suite 205  
Houston, TX 77042  
Tel: 713/777-5394  
Fax: 713/266-0961

CORONA PUBLISHING COMPANY  
P.O. Drawer 12407  
San Antonio, TX 78212  
Tel: 210/341-7525

CORONET/MTI FILM AND VIDEO  
P.O. Box 2649  
Columbus, OH 43216-2649  
Tel: 800/321-3106  
Fax: 614/771-7362

GEORGE F. CRAM COMPANY  
P.O. Box 426  
Indianapolis, IN 46206  
Tel: 800/227-4199  
Fax: 317/635-2720

CREATIVE EDUCATION, INC.  
P.O. Box 227  
Mankato, MN 56002-0227  
Tel: 800/445-6209  
Fax: 507/388-2746

DALLAS HISTORICAL SOCIETY  
Hall of State, Fair Park  
P.O. Box 26038

Dallas, TX 75226  
Tel: 214/421-4500

DALLAS MORNING NEWS  
P.O. Box 655237  
Dallas, TX 75265  
Tel: 800/826-4216

DAUGHTERS OF THE REPUBLIC OF  
TEXAS  
510 E. Anderson Lane  
Austin, TX 78752  
Tel: 512/339-1997

DELL PUBLISHING COMPANY  
1540 Broadway  
New York, NY 10036-4094  
Tel: 800/223-6834

DINAH-MIGHT ACTIVITIES  
P.O. Box 39657  
San Antonio, TX 78218  
Tel: (orders only) 800/99-MIGHT  
Fax: 210/657-0590

EAKIN PUBLICATIONS, INC./  
SUNBELT MEDIA  
P.O. Box 90159  
Austin, TX 78709  
Tel: 800/880-8642  
Fax: 512/288-1813

*THE EARLY WEST*  
P.O. Box 9292  
College Station, TX 77842  
Tel: 800/245-5841

EAST TEXAS HISTORICAL  
ASSOCIATION  
P.O. Box 6223  
Stephen F. Austin State University  
Nacogdoches, TX 75962  
Tel: 409/568-2407

★  
EDWARDS AQUIFER WATER DISTRICT

P.O. Box 15830  
San Antonio, TX 78212  
Tel: 800/292-1047

## ENCINO PRESS

510 Baylor Street  
Austin, TX 78703  
Tel: 512/476-6821  
Fax: 512/476-9393

ENCYCLOPAEDIA BRITANNICA  
EDUCATIONAL CORPORATION

310 S. Michigan Avenue  
Chicago, IL 60604  
Tel: 800/554-9862  
Fax: 312/347-7966

ERIC DOCUMENT REPRODUCTION  
SERVICE

7420 Fullerton Road, Suite 110  
Springfield, VA 22153  
Tel: 800/443-3742  
Fax: 703/440-1408

## FACTS ON FILE, INC.

460 Park Avenue South  
New York, NY 10016-7382  
Tel: 800/322-8755

## FOREST GLEN PRODUCTIONS

KLRU TV  
P.O. Box 50238  
Austin, TX 78763-0238  
Tel: 512/345-0691

## FS&amp;G

19 Union Square, West  
New York, NY 10003  
Tel: 800/788-6262

GOLDEN OWL PUBLISHING  
COMPANY

Jackdaw Publications  
P.O. Box 503

Amawalk, NY 10501-0503

Tel: 800/789-0022

Fax: 800/962-9101

## GREENHAVEN PRESS

P.O. Box 289009  
San Diego, CA 92198-9009  
Tel: 800/231-5163

## GREENWOOD PRESS

P.O. Box 5007  
Westport, CT 06881  
Tel: 800/225-5800  
Fax: 203/222-1502

## GULF PUBLISHING COMPANY

P.O. Box 2608  
Houston, TX 77252-2608  
Tel: 713/520-4467  
Fax: 713/525-4647

## HARCOURT BRACE JOVANOVICH,

6277 Sea Harbor Drive  
Orlando, FL 32887  
Tel: 800/831-7799

## HARLAN-DAVIDSON, INC.

773 Glenn Ave.  
Wheeling, IL 60090-6000  
Tel: 708/541-9720  
Fax: 708/541-9830

## HARPER &amp; ROW PUBLISHERS, INC.

1000 Keystone Industrial Park  
Scranton, PA 18512-4621  
Tel: 717/941-1500

## HARPER/COLLINS

1000 Keystone Industrial Park  
Scranton, PA 18512-4621  
Tel: 717/941-1500

HENDRICK-LONG PUBLISHING  
COMPANY

P.O. Box 25123



Dallas, TX 75225  
Tel: 800/544-3770  
Fax: 214/352-4768

HIGH TOUCH LEARNING, INC.  
129 Grant Street, Box 754  
Houston, MN 55943  
Tel: 800/255-0645

*THE HISTORY TEACHER*  
Society for History Education  
California State University, Long Beach  
1250 Bellflower Boulevard  
Long Beach, CA 90840  
Tel: 310/985-1653  
Fax: 310/985-5431

HOLIDAY  
425 Madison Ave.  
New York, NY 10017  
Tel: 212/685-0085

HOUGHTON MIFFLIN & COMPANY  
Wayside Road  
Burlington, MA 01803  
Tel: 800/225-3362

HOUSTON METROPOLITAN  
RESEARCH CENTER  
500 McKinney Street  
Houston, TX 77002  
Tel: 713/236-1313

ARCHER M. HUNTINGTON ART  
GALLERY  
University of Texas at Austin  
23rd & San Jacinto Streets  
Austin, TX 78712  
Tel: 512/471-7324  
Fax: 512/471-7023

INDIANA UNIVERSITY  
Instructional Support Center  
Bloomington, IN 47405-5901

Tel: 800/552-8620  
Fax: 812/855-8404

INSTITUTE OF TEXAN CULTURES  
University of Texas at San Antonio  
P.O. Box 1226  
San Antonio, TX 78294  
Tel: 800/776-7651  
Fax: 210/558-2205

KEDT-TV/FM  
4455 South Padre Island  
Corpus Christi, TX 78411-4481  
Tel: 512/855-2213  
Fax: 512/855-3877

KNOWING PRESS  
P.O. Box 5276  
McAllen, TX 78502-5276  
Tel: 210/686-4033

LARKSDALE  
P.O. Box 801222  
Houston, TX 77280  
Tel: 800/666-2332

LEE & LOW BOOKS  
4065 Hollis Street  
Emeryville, CA 94608  
Tel: 800/788-3123

LITTLE, BROWN & COMPANY  
200 West Street  
Waltham, MA 02154  
Tel: 800/759-0190

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY  
PRESS  
Louisiana State University  
Baton Rouge, LA 70893  
Tel: 504/388-6294

DAVID MCKAY COMPANY, INC.  
c/o Random House  
400 Hahn Road  
Westminster, MD 21157



MACMILLAN  
1007 Front Street  
P.O. Box 500  
Riverside, NJ 08075-7500  
Tel: 609/461-6500

MADISON BOOKS  
4720 Boston Way  
Lanham, MD 20706  
Tel: 800/462-6420  
Fax: 301/459-2118

MILBROOK PRESS  
2 Old Milford Road  
Brookfield, CT 06804  
Tel: 800/462-4703

WILLIAM MORROW AND COMPANY  
Wilmor Warehouse  
39 Plymouth Street  
P.O. Box 1219  
Fairfield, NJ 07007  
Tel: 201/227-7200

NASA, LYNDON B. JOHNSON SPACE  
CENTER  
Media Services Corp.  
News and Information Branch/AP42  
Film Distribution Library  
P.O. Box 58425  
Houston, TX 77058  
Tel: 713/483-2975  
Fax: 713/483-2848

NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR HISTORY  
EDUCATION  
26915 Westwood Road, Suite B-2  
Westlake, OH 44145  
Tel: 216/835-1776  
Fax: 216/835-1295

NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR THE  
SOCIAL STUDIES  
Publications  
P.O. Box 79078

Baltimore, MD 21279-0078  
Tel: 800/683-0812

NATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY  
4255 Touhy Avenue  
Lincolnwood, IL 60646  
Tel: 708/679-5500

NATIONAL TRUST FOR HISTORIC  
PRESERVATION  
1785 Massachusetts Ave., NW  
Washington, D.C. 20036  
Tel: 202/673-4286  
Fax: 202/673-4223

NATIONAL WILDFLOWER RESEARCH  
CENTER  
4801 La Crosse Blvd.  
Austin, TX 78739  
Tel: 512/292-4200

NATIONAL WOMEN'S HISTORY  
PROJECT  
7738 Bell Road  
Windsor, CA 95492-8518  
Tel: 707/838-6000  
Fax: 707/838-0478

NEL-MAR  
P.O. Drawer 2307  
Morganton, NC 28655-2307  
Tel: 800/227-1591

NORTH TEXAS TAPING AND RADIO  
FOR THE BLIND  
3001 Bookhout  
Dallas, TX 75202  
Tel: 214/871-7668  
Fax: 214/871-7669

NYSTROM DIVISION OF HERFF  
JONES, INC.  
3333 Elston Avenue  
Chicago, IL 60618  
Tel: 800/621-8086  
Fax: 312/463-0515



## OFFICE OF THE GOVERNOR

P.O. Box 12428  
Austin, TX 78711  
Tel: 512/463-2000

## ORCHARD BOOKS

Trade Operations  
P.O. Box 1332  
Danbury, CT 06813  
Tel: 800/629-1115  
Fax: 800/374-4329

ORGANIZATION OF AMERICAN  
HISTORIANS

112 North Bryan Street  
Bloomington, IN 47408-4199  
Tel: 812/855-7311  
Fax: 812/855-0696

## OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

200 Madison Ave.  
New York, NY 10016  
Tel: 212/726-6033

PANHANDLE-PLAINS HISTORICAL  
ASSOCIATION

Box 967, W.T. Station  
Canyon, TX 79016  
Tel: 806/656-2244

## PBS VIDEO

1320 Braddock Place  
Alexandria, VA 22314-1698  
Tel: 703/739-5000

## PELICAN PUBLISHING COMPANY

P.O. Box 3110  
Gretna, LA 70054  
Tel: 800/843-1724  
Fax: 504/368-1195

POLICY RESEARCH INSTITUTE OF  
THE UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS AT  
AUSTIN

LBJ School of Public Affairs

## University of Texas at Austin

attn.: Office of Publications  
Austin, TX 78713-7450  
Tel: 512/471-4218

## PUFFIN

375 Hudson Street  
New York, NY 10014-3657  
Tel: 212/366-2000

## PUTNAM BERKELEY GROUP, INC.

200 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10016  
Tel: 212/951-8776  
Fax: 212/545-8919

## RAND McNALLY AND COMPANY

Educational Publishing Division  
P.O. Box 1906  
Skokie, IL 60076-9714  
Tel: 800/678-7263  
Fax: 800/934-3479

## RANDOM HOUSE

400 Hahn Road  
Westminster, MD 21157  
Tel: 800/733-3000

## RED ROSE STUDIO

358 Flintlock Drive  
Willow Street, PA 17584  
Tel: 717/464-3873

## REPUBLIC OF TEXAS PRESS

1506 Capital Avenue  
Plano, TX 75074  
Tel: 214/423-0090  
Fax: 214/881-9147

## RMI MEDIA PRODUCTIONS

1365 North Winchester  
Olathe, KN 66061  
Tel: 800/745-5480  
Fax: 800/755-6910

---

 ★
   
 SAM RAYBURN HOUSE MUSEUM

Route 3  
 Bonham, TX 75418  
 Tel: 903/583-5558

## SAN JACINTO MUSEUM OF HISTORY

3800 Park Road 1836  
 La Porte, TX 77571  
 Tel: 713/479-2421

## SHEARER PUBLISHING

406 Post Oak Road  
 Fredericksburg, TX 78624  
 Tel: 210/997-6529

## SILVER BURDETT COMPANY

P.O. Box 2649  
 Columbus, OH 43216  
 Fax: 614/771-7361

## DOROTHY SINCLAIR ENTERPRISES

P.O. Box 782  
 Bellaire, TX 77401-0782  
 Tel: 713/664-9809

## SOCIAL STUDIES SCHOOL SERVICE

P.O. Box 802  
 Culver City, CA 90232-0802  
 Tel: 800/421-4246  
 Fax: 310/839-2249

SOCIETY FOR VISUAL EDUCATION,  
INC. (SVE)

55 E. Monroe, Suite 3400  
 Chicago, IL 60603-5803  
 Tel: 800/829-9100  
 Fax: 800/624-1678

*SOUTHWEST REVIEW*

6410 Airline Road  
 Southern Methodist University  
 Dallas, TX 75275  
 Tel: 214/768-2000

## STAR OF THE REPUBLIC MUSEUM

P.O. Box 317  
 Washington, TX 77880  
 Tel: 409/878-2461  
 Fax: 409/878-2462

## STATE BAR OF TEXAS

P.O. Box 12487  
 Austin, TX 78711  
 Tel: 512/463-1463  
 Fax: 512/475-1904

## STATE HOUSE PRESS

8906 Wall Street  
 Austin, TX 78754  
 Tel: 512/288-4442

## STECK-VAUGHN COMPANY

P.O. Box 26015  
 Austin, TX 78755  
 Tel: 800/531-5015  
 Fax: 512/343-6854

## ELLEN C. TEMPLE

5030 Champions Drive, Suite 100  
 Lufkin, TX 75901  
 Tel: 409/639-4707

## TEXART SERVICES, INC.

P.O. Box 15440  
 San Antonio, TX 78212-8640  
 Tel: 210/826-2889

## TEXAS A&amp;M UNIVERSITY PRESS

Drawer C  
 College Station, TX 77843-4354  
 Tel: 800/826-8911  
 Fax: 409/847-8752

TEXAS ALMANAC AND STATE  
INDUSTRIAL GUIDE

The Dallas *Morning News*  
 Communications Center



P.O. BOX 655237  
Dallas, TX 75265  
Tel: 800/642-6480

TEXAS ASSOCIATION OF MUSEUMS  
P.O. Box 13353  
Austin, TX 78711  
Tel: 512/328-6812  
Fax: 512/327-9775

TEXAS BAPTIST HISTORICAL SOCIETY  
P.O. Box 97023  
Waco, TX 76798

TEXAS CATHOLIC HISTORICAL  
ASSOCIATION  
P.O. Box 13327  
Austin, TX 78711

TEXAS CHRISTIAN UNIVERSITY PRESS  
P.O. Box 30783  
Fort Worth, TX 76129  
Tel: 817/921-7822

TEXAS COMMITTEE FOR THE  
HUMANITIES  
3809 South Second  
Bldg. A  
Austin, TX 78704  
Tel: 512/440-1991  
Fax: 512/440-0115

TEXAS CONSERVATION FUND  
400 West 15th Street  
Austin, TX 78701  
Tel: 512/480-0582

TEXAS COUNCIL FOR THE SOCIAL  
STUDIES  
*The Social Studies Texan*  
Route 3, Box 403 H  
Decatur, TX 76234  
Tel: 817/627-3837

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF  
TRANSPORTATION  
Video Library  
Travel and Information Division  
P.O. Box 5000  
Austin, TX 78763  
Tel: 512/465-7409

TEXAS FOLKLIFE RESOURCES  
P.O. Box 49824  
Austin, TX 78765

TEXAS FOLKLORE SOCIETY  
University of North Texas Press  
P.O. Box 13856  
Denton, TX 76203  
Tel: 817/565-2142  
Fax: 817/565-4590

TEXAS GENERAL LAND OFFICE  
attn.: Archives and Records  
Stephen F. Austin Building  
1700 North Congress Avenue  
Austin, TX 78701  
Tel: 512/464-5277

*TEXAS HIGHWAYS*  
P.O. Box 5016  
Austin, TX 78763-9833  
Tel: 512/483-3689

TEXAS HISTORICAL COMMISSION  
P.O. Box 12276  
Capitol Station  
Austin, TX 78711  
Tel: 512/475-4960  
Fax: 512/305-9246

TEXAS HISTORICAL FOUNDATION  
3009 N. Lamar Blvd.  
Austin, TX 78705  
Tel: 512/453-2154



TEXAS PARKS AND WILDLIFE  
DEPARTMENT  
4200 Smith School Road  
Austin, TX 78744  
Tel: 512/912-7000

TEXAS STATE DIRECTORY PRESS  
P.O. Box 12186  
Austin, TX 78711  
Tel: 512/477-5698  
Fax: 512/473-2447

TEXAS STATE HISTORICAL  
ASSOCIATION  
2/306 Sid Richardson Hall  
University Station  
Austin, TX 78712  
Tel: 512/471-1525  
Fax: 512/471-1551

TEXAS STATE LIBRARY  
Box 12927  
Capitol Station  
Austin, TX 78711  
Tel: 512/463-5463

TEXAS STUDIES GOPHER,  
ARMADILLO  
<http://www.rice.edu/armadillo>

TEXAS TECH PRESS  
Texas Tech University  
Lubbock, TX 79409  
Tel: 806/742-2982

TEXAS TRAILBLAZER PRESERVATION  
ASSOCIATION  
P.O. Box 23320  
Houston, TX 77228  
Tel: 713/633-1125

TEXIAN PRESS  
P.O. Box 1684  
Waco, TX 76703  
Tel: 817/754-5636

TICKNOR AND FIELDS  
Wayside Road  
Burlington, MA 01803  
Tel: 800/225-3362

*TOUCHSTONE*  
Texas State Historical Association  
2/306 Sid Richardson Hall  
University Station  
Austin, TX 78712  
Tel: 512/471-1525  
Fax: 512/471-1551

TROLL ASSOCIATES  
100 Corporate Drive  
Mahwah, NJ 07430  
Tel: 800/526-5289

U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY  
Map Division  
Branch of Distribution  
Federal Center  
P.O. Box 25425  
Denver, CO 80225  
Tel: 303/202-4700

UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA PRESS  
312 North Street  
Lincoln, NE 68588  
Tel: 800/755-1105

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH TEXAS  
PRESS  
P.O. Box 13856  
Denton, TX 76203  
Tel: 817/565-2142  
Fax: 817/565-4590

UNIVERSITY OF OKLAHOMA PRESS  
1005 Asp Avenue  
Norman, OK 73019-0445  
Tel: 800/627-7377  
Fax: 800/735-0476



UNIVERSITY PRESS OF AMERICA  
4720 Boston Way  
Lanhan, MD 20706

UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS PRESS  
P.O. Box 7819  
Austin, TX 78712  
Tel: 800/252-3206  
Fax: 512/320-0668

VICTORIA COLLEGE PRESS  
2200 East Red River  
Victoria, TX 77901

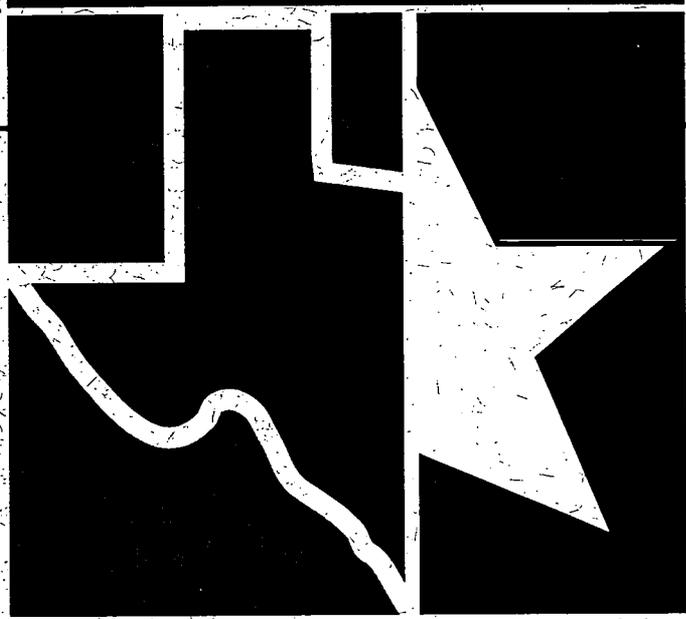
VIKING PENGUIN, INC.  
100 Fabright Road  
Newbern, TN 38059-1334  
Tel: 800/331-4624

WALKER AND COMPANY  
435 Hudson Street  
New York, NY 10014  
Tel: 800/289-2553

WEST TEXAS HISTORICAL  
ASSOCIATION  
Box 512  
Hardin-Simmons University  
Abilene, TX 79698

WESTVIEW PRESS  
1000 Keystone Industrial Park  
Scranton, PA 18512-4621  
Tel: 800/456-1995

ZENGER MEDIA  
P. O. Box 802  
Culver City, CA 90232-0802  
Tel: 800/421-4246  
Fax: 800/944-5432



**Bringing History Home**



## Bringing History Home



*The following forty-four ideas were compiled by Thad Sitton and Debra Goodwin in 1985 as classroom project ideas for the Texas Sesquicentennial celebration of 1986. They are reprinted here because these projects are still excellent devices to awaken students to the realization that history is a part of their own world. These ideas may be reproduced for classroom use.*

The ideas in this section present teachers with a variety of options in the general area of "Local History/Community Studies"—projects large and small, which teachers and their students may pursue in and out of the classroom. The central assumption is that community studies are (or at least should be) an important part of the public school curriculum.

After all, local history is the history in which students are personally involved and of which they have direct experience. Too often students perceive "history" as an impersonal thing—something that always happened long ago, far away, and to somebody else—something written down in textbooks, and having almost nothing to do with them. The projects in "Bringing History Home" present a different view of the past. They actively involve students in an individual quest for a *personal* heritage within the topical framework of community, ethnic, and family history.

Hopefully, these projects can awaken students to the realization that history is all around them. As William Faulkner once wrote: "The past is not 'dead'; it's not even *past*."

**COMMON DENOMINATORS OF THE IDEAS.** Certain common assumptions that guided the choice of project ideas in "Bringing History Home" are briefly stated here:

- **COMMUNITY STUDIES.** The ideas that utilize the community as both a source of learning and as motivation for students to learn.
- **A PERSONAL FOCUS.** The projects assume that the basic motivation for studying the past is essentially personal—to find out who or what you are. The projects involve students in an exploration of their own historical and cultural "roots."



- A FIELDWORK EMPHASIS. Like the student journal *Foxfire* and the many classroom projects derived from *Foxfire*, most ideas involve students in out-of-school research settings. The projects require them to search through the family archives of documents and photographs and to rummage through family attics in search of old books, clothing, and other historical artifacts. Most importantly, these projects require students to interview (and often record) their parents and grandparents to collect the materials of family and ethnic history.
- AN ENLARGED DEFINITION OF HISTORY. The projects assume that “history” is anything that was used or happened in the past and is not just the doings of important persons. This is history considered as “past culture,” in the anthropological sense of culture. Hence, history includes the way people farmed the land, preserved foodstuffs, and courted their wives or husbands—the whole “way of life” practiced by the students’ grandparents.
- THE IDEA OF CULTURAL PLURALISM. This is simply the belief that cultural differences should be approached as positive—something to celebrate rather than to ignore or erase, a diversification and enrichment of community life. The projects do not always place explicit emphasis on ethnicity, but they assume that ethnic diversity will be an important part of their actual implementation. It could scarcely be otherwise; in a multi-ethnic community, “local history” is also “ethnic studies.”

Finally, the ideas in “Bringing History Home” are purposely general and require the teacher to adjust and adapt them to his or her grade level, teaching style, and individual classroom. Most project ideas can probably be used at several grade levels, and no one can possibly be more expert or knowledgeable about making these adjustments than the classroom teacher him/herself.

### IDEA 1 *A School History*



Assuming that your school is not “shiny new,” that it has at least some time depth, embark on a project to research and write its “official” history. Research school records, old newspapers from the school and community, and (especially) the memories of past administrators, teachers, and alumni. Conduct extensive oral history interviews with these “former inmates.” Make your publication available to the general community—it is likely to be very interested! The finished history could take a variety of forms, including: a chronological history of major developments in school life (new wings added, state championship football teams, etc.); a social history of the school through the years (student and faculty dress and demeanor, student pastimes, clubs, etc.), a series of oral history interviews with earlier students, teachers, and administrators, transcribed and published verbatim, etc.



*IDEA 2*  
*Student Oral History: Topic Tapes*



Alone, or in research teams, students check out school tape recorders and embark on a variety of topical projects in community oral history.

Students collect various oral testimonies from community residents knowledgeable about their chosen topic. They transcribe and edit these materials and turn them in to the teacher. (Both tapes and transcripts then could become part of the teacher's resources for teaching local history.)

**Suggestions:** Practice with the tape recorder beforehand, and read a brief "How To Do It" account of oral history.\* Begin the interviewing with a family member such as a grandmother or grandfather, someone familiar to you and not "threatening." After this introduction, other interviews will seem less frightening.

**Alternatives:** The typical alternatives are almost limitless. Here are a few: mule farming, cotton days, the oil field boom, coyotes, snakes and snake lore, ghost stories, weather signs, cattle raising, wild foods, old-time amusements, outlaws, legendary lawmen, community disasters (fires, floods, epidemics), old-time crafts and technologies, etc.

*IDEA 3*

*Old Photographs: Windows Into Time*



Students bring in old photographs from their family collections to be copied and displayed.

A student's family history in photographs may be photocopied and the prints displayed in the classroom. (Before copying, photos are affixed to sheets of paper with a drop of rubber cement. This secures them long enough to copy and doesn't harm them.)

The most interesting and historically significant photographs could be copied by the teacher on an Ektagraphic Duplicator and added to the school's (or the teacher's) collection of historical slides. The duplicator, a prefocused camera for converting photographs (drawings, etc.) to slides, may be found in many schools. These old photos are priceless records of the local past, literally "windows into time," and both students and teachers perform a great historical service to future generations when they permanently preserve them. The photographs or slides may be used in the classroom to explore the processes of historical inquiry. Each photo can serve as a subject for an exercise in historical detective work, in which students seek to recover the maximum amount of

---

\*See Willa K. Baum, *Oral History for the Local Historical Society* (Nashville: American Association for State and Local History, 1971), and George L. Mehaffy, Thad Sitton, and O. L. Davis Jr., *Oral History for the Classroom*, Monograph in the "How To Do It" series of the National Council for the Social Studies, Series 2(8), 1979.



historical information from the photo. This information might include:

- the name of the photographer,
- the photographer's address,
- the date the photograph was made,
- notations on the front or back of the photo,
- the photographic process used (Daguerreotype—1839–1856, Calotype—1841–1855, Ferrotypes or Tintypes—1855–1874, Ambrotype—1848–1880, Celluloid—1887–present), and
- the contents of the photo (physical setting, people, buildings, vehicles, animals, plants, furniture, machinery, etc.).

After careful examination of all evidence, the class might prepare a set of assumptions about the photo, including its date, locality, names of persons, architectural period, and fashion period.

**Alternatives:** The old photos could stimulate a variety of exercises in creative writing. Students might “imagine” personalities to go with the persons depicted in the photographs and write a short story or sketch about them, a brief fictional account of what happened the day the photo was made, or simply a personal “reaction” to the photograph.

#### IDEA 4

#### *Mapping Family Geography*



On an outline map, students plot the movements of their parents and grandparents from birth to the present.

Movements might be charted on U.S., Texas, or county maps, whichever seem most appropriate. Movements (and stopping places) would be marked in colored ink, using different colors for different relatives. Notations beside places of residence on the map would include the rough dates at which family members arrived and left, the approximate time spent at that location, and what they were doing at the time. If the family has the information, the map could follow one family line back into the great-grandparents' and great-great-grandparents' generations.

#### IDEA 5

#### *Family History: The Generations Exercise*



Students use a dot symbol (an inked end of a pencil eraser) to illustrate the meaning of the generation concept.



Using a piece of wide paper (butcher's paper, wrapping paper, shelf paper), an eraser and an ink pad, the student places one dot at the top of the paper for him or herself. Then, just below it, the student makes two dots for his parents (the second generation), and below those dots, four more for his grandparents (the third generation). The process is continued through the fourth, fifth, and sixth generations, and beyond. Eventually the student is certain to become impressed by the sheer numbers of his direct-line ancestors. The student can calculate the approximate birth dates of each lineal generation by beginning with his own and then counting back twenty-five years (as "guess-estimate") for the birth dates of each preceding generation. These approximate birth dates can be listed down at the edge of the paper. At some point, the number of direct ancestors will approach the (estimated) number of genes on a human chromosome! Students may very well be direct lineal descendants of kings, queens, princesses, and other "great ones."

**Alternatives:** Given that students are, on the average, just as related to any of their ancestors within a generation, they may wish to explore the reasons for our emphasis upon the male (father's) line. People commonly say "I am a Jones," thus identifying with the Jones family for many generations back and ignoring (or neglecting) the other surname lines to which they are equally related.

### IDEA 6 *A County History Map*



The teacher obtains a set of topographic maps of the county, and as a classroom project, students begin a process of coding "event cards" to "event numbers" carefully placed in their proper locations on the map.

Topographic maps, already rich with cultural information, easily lend themselves to this historical purpose.

Items noted on the history map might include:

- ☛ battles,
- ☛ the home sites of early settlers,
- ☛ land grants,
- ☛ trail drive routes,
- ☛ archaeological sites,
- ☛ old roads,
- ☛ legends and other "stories" (folklore) attached to particular locations,
- ☛ local business and industrial sites, or
- ☛ anything and everything associated with "significant events" in the community past.



Nothing would appear on the map except the "event number," which would refer the map user to a description of the significance of that particular location on the corresponding "event card." The map/event card set would be kept by the teacher as a reference for studying county history.

### IDEA 7 *Cemetery Studies*



Students embark upon a variety of projects that utilize local cemeteries as historical resources and objects of study.

Cemeteries reflect changing attitudes (and ethnic group variations in attitudes) toward community, life, society, and death. As a field project, a class could do a formal survey of all or part of a county cemetery, preferably one that has not been surveyed before.

The survey procedure includes:

- getting permission from the appropriate cemetery association, which will usually be grateful for the class to do this (to find out about the various associations, contact the county history society);
- making a preliminary reconnaissance of the site to get the general layout, to take photographs, etc.;
- making the survey—teams of students move around allotted areas, mapping the locations of all graves, recording all information on tombstones, etc.; and
- doing the "write-up." Back in the classroom, students draw up a formal map of the cemetery, including all recorded information (names, dates, epitaphs, etc.). Copies of the finished survey would be much appreciated by the cemetery association, the county historical commission, and the local libraries.

Alternatives: Once the data are in, many different studies are possible. Topics for historical analysis include:

- types of gravestones, changes in the types, and frequencies of types over time,
- changes in the decorative motifs on gravestones,
- changing styles of epitaphs,
- changing customs for arrangement of family members within plots,
- the orientation of graves and the religious significance of this (toward the East, West?),
- the languages of gravestone inscriptions (English, Spanish, Hebrew, German, etc.),



- ethnic differences in gravesites,
- socioeconomic differences in gravesites, and
- demographic information (i.e., evidence of changes in infant mortality, evidence of great epidemics—such as the flu epidemic of 1918—evidence of changes in life expectancy, etc.).

*IDEA 8*  
*Origins of County Place-Names*



Using a topographic county map as reference, students discover the origins of local place-names.

This strategy relates students to local history and cultural geography through a study of “names on the land”—the place-names of the home county. These would be the names of communities, roads, city streets, parts of the county, streams, and other natural features. The teacher posts a topographic map of the county area under study. Students research the origins of place-names on the map by asking other students, teachers, parents and grandparents, and other local persons who might know the origin of the names. As different theories accumulate, they may be:

- > printed on the topographic map, and
- > numerically keyed to explanations posted below the map.

Where accounts of origins differ, students try to decide which explanation is most likely to be true and designate this “most likely” explanation in some way. The “annotated map” could stay with the teacher as an accumulative resource in local history/cultural geography.

**Alternatives:** A given project could choose to emphasize any of several place-name categories—city streets, rivers and creeks, rural communities, etc. Students should be alert for older place-names or streets and communities now known by another name. (For example, Webberville in Travis County was once called “Hog Eye”!) Students could work alone or in teams. They could undertake individual projects in place-name origins around their homes, including the local names that aren’t on the topographic map. The whole class might work on a single place-name at the same time, collecting (and analyzing) the various explanations of its origin.

*IDEA 9*  
*Local History/Folklore Fair*



This project would publicly exhibit the products of a school’s “Local History” classes. Modeled upon the science fair idea, it could be held once a year. The exhibition would be school-wide and



open to the general public. It would display the cumulative products of the year's projects in local history and folklore, including maps, "time capsules," "personal time-lines," family history displays, artifact collections, taped interviews, etc. The emphasis throughout would be upon:

- ⇒ students' personal explorations of their family, ethnic group, and community histories,
- ⇒ ethnic diversity in community life, and
- ⇒ the re-definition of history to include folklore, crafts, artifacts, and "old customs"—history conceived as "past culture" in the anthropologist's sense of the term.

Alternatives: Display materials could come from a single class, a group of classes, or the entire school.

### IDEA 10 *Student Architectural Projects*



After choosing a building that interests them and is at least fifty years old, students "research" this structure.

This could be a house, an industrial building, a store, etc.—any building that people have lived or worked in. Students would try to get all available information about the structure, both directly from persons who lived or worked in it, and indirectly from courthouse records. This "detective work" would result in a report to the class, which might include: photographs or sketches of the structure, a floor plan, a written summary of information about the structure, etc. Some questions students might try to answer are: How old is the building? Who built/lived/worked in it? How has it been used? What happened there? Thus, the old building is approached as an important "historical artifact" of local history and serves as a tangible focal point for student research into that history.

Alternatives: Student research could be keyed to a city or county map. Student-gathered information on county architectural history might be kept by the teacher as an accumulative resource. As an alternative (or as introduction to individual student projects), a class could research one building at a time, as a class, or as research teams.

### IDEA 11 *Rubbings: Imprint of History*



Students obtain paper and large crayons (or charcoal) and make historical rubbings as a class project.



Suitable things to “rub” might be: old cornerstones on buildings, antique manhole covers, inscriptions on tombstones, art and/or lettering on monuments, bronze plaques on buildings, contractors’ imprints in sidewalks, cornice inscriptions and designs around the doorways of old buildings, and kids’ names and other things people scribble into wet cement (graffiti). Rubbing results in tangible (and decorative) images of community history and may culminate in impressive class displays. A few notes on how to rub follow:

- ☞ Use thin paper.
- ☞ Tape it securely over the inscription to be rubbed.
- ☞ Pick up the underlying image by rubbing with the edge of the crayon or charcoal (not the end).
- ☞ Periodically sweep off the paper (carefully) with a small whisk broom.
- ☞ Be persistent—the darker you get the raised surfaces surrounding the inscription, the more impressive will be the rubbing.
- ☞ If you are using charcoal, spray fixative can be put on the rubbing to keep it from smudging.

### IDEA 12 *The Slang Project*



Students work together as a class to compile a multi-ethnic, multi-generational glossary of community “slang.” (See “Tri-Cultural Compilations.”)

This project studies sociolinguistics, or the history of verbal expressions. As a field-research enterprise, students might begin with an examination of their own speech—the slang of public-school students. They could then collect slang expressions from their parents’ and grandparents’ generations.

These materials could be collected, compiled, and separated (if appropriate) by ethnic group and generation. In the process, students could examine various questions about slang:

- \* Why slang anyway—what is its social function? How is it used?
- \* Who invents slang—where does it come from?
- \* Why does it become obsolete (and why so rapidly)? Why are people always inventing *new* slang?
- \* Is there some slang that a person uses with one group that he doesn’t use with another? Why?
- \* Is slang “folklore”?

- Alternatives:
- \* Students might study the current slang used by grade-school kids.
  - \* Students could collect “nineteenth-century slang” from grandparents and great-grandparents.



- \* A student research project could choose an example of recent "formative" slang among students and try to check how widespread it was and whether students remembered where they first heard it.
- \* Students could try to pinpoint the origins of their "fresh" slang.
- \* The class might try an experiment in which they "invent" an item of slang and agree to use it in their conversations with non-class students for one week. Then they might study the degree to which it had caught on and with whom (underclassmen?)

### IDEA 13

#### *Student as Family Archivist*



In this project, students approach family records (deeds, wills, etc.), letters, and photographs as historical documents; they inventory them and carefully put them in order.

As a class project, as well as for family use, students carefully sift through family records and prepare an historical inventory of those materials. The inventory should list all documents and photographs in terms of some logical framework (by year, person, topic, etc.), and the original documents or photographs should be carefully marked with numbers corresponding to their descriptions in the inventory.

Students will probably find many unfamiliar items and should make every effort to locate relatives who can explain these unfamiliar documents or photographs. This historical detective work, of course, is the real challenge of the project, and is precisely the challenge faced by the professional archivist. The family archive provides the raw material from which family history can ultimately be written. The student should leave it in good order, with an accurate inventory to guide family historians of the future.

### IDEA 14

#### *Me/Us Charts*



Given a certain space of blank poster-paper, mounted on the classroom wall, each student assembles a "Me Chart." A "Me Chart" displays a montage of those things that the student feels to be most important about him or her as:

- ⇨ an individual,
- ⇨ a family member, and
- ⇨ an ethnic group member.

The "Me Chart" may include written materials, documents and photographs from the home, pictures cut out of magazines, small artifacts (objects)—anything and everything that the student chooses to represent him/herself. The materials on the "Me Chart" should constitute a personal



“read out”—an expression of individuality. Students could choose one important representative item about themselves that they want most to contribute to the class. The self-chosen items combine to form a large “Us Chart” to be displayed in the classroom.

*IDEA 15*  
*A Self-Guiding Tour of the Community*



As a group project, the class researches, writes, and “publishes” a “Community Tour Guide.”

This would include a map of the town, with important historical sites, structures, and buildings designated by numbers. The numbers would be keyed to text following the map, which would give a brief description of the particular site, structure, or building, and a statement about its significance in the community’s past. The map would suggest a walking or driving route passing all historical map locations. This “self-guiding” historical map could then be used by students on school field trips, community residents, and tourists. A detailed street map of the home community is almost always obtainable, and students might conduct much of the necessary research by phone from school and/or home. The local newspaper and the chamber of commerce, not to mention the local (and county) historical society, will be very interested in such a school project.

**Alternatives:** Students living in outlying communities could do the same sort of “historical site inventory” for their home areas. They could make self-guiding historical maps covering those communities, and these individual research projects could be ultimately incorporated within a “master” self-guiding historical map of the entire county. (Possibilities for inclusion might be: archaeological sites, sites of battles, locations of home-places of the county’s earliest settlers, and sites of old settlements, historic buildings of all kinds, natural features of particular historical significance, etc.)

*IDEA 16*  
*Class Problems Research*



The class members select an interesting and relevant question about county history, individually “research” it at home among their older relatives, and then bring that information to a general class discussion of the topic.

Topics might be (among many, many others): What happened to cotton agriculture in the county? What were travel conditions like circa World War I? When did the tenant farming system meet its demise? Why is the population of the county much less or much more than it was, say forty years ago? How did people preserve food before electricity? What was the Ku Klux Klan, what did people think about it, what did it do in the 1920s, and what became of it? What is the local history of the prohibition movement?, etc.



Class Problems Research is a deceptively simple (but powerful) formula for involving students in:

- the history of the home community,
- their own families,
- the practical skills of fieldwork and interviewing, and
- a consideration of the process whereby the historian arrives at his interpretations of the past.

Working together, students and teacher must evaluate the diverse and conflicting testimonies gathered about these historical problems. Since the history of most localities largely remains to be written, the students' judgments are as good as anyone's and should be treated with some seriousness.

Send copies of students' research to the County Historical Commission to help it compile a book on county history, or write your own booklet on each topic.

Alternatives: Class Problems Research could result in the class (with the teacher's advice) drafting a summary of the historical evidence pertaining to the problem, as well as the class interpretation of that evidence. Alternatively, data that students gather on the research problem may accumulate with the teacher as a teaching resource, and be amended and extended by the research activities of subsequent classes.

### IDEA 17 *Old Book Collection*



As a class project, students go to their parents' and grandparents' attics in search of old books, pamphlets, and magazines, and bring these to class.

This project could be a contest, with the theme "the older the better." Afterwards the collected material might serve as a resource for the study of community intellectual life in past decades. How were people different around the turn of the century? With what topics were they the most preoccupied? Old books can suggest some interesting answers.

Alternatives: All sorts of "then vs. now" studies would be possible with this material—for example, "teenage literature, then and now," "the role of women as portrayed in popular fiction, then and now," etc. Students could do book reports on these published materials, treating them as "historical documents" and inferring from them the life and thought of the day in which they were written and read. A teacher could gradually compile his or her own collection of books, pamphlets, and magazines, or various teachers could jointly contribute to an "old book collection" in the school resource center or library.



*IDEA 18*  
*A School/Community Artifact Museum*



Begin a community "artifact museum" to be located at the school—a museum of tools, farming and ranching implements, household technology—the common objects of daily life at the turn of the century or before. This would not be a fine arts museum, but a "museum of everyday objects" that, for the most part, have not attained the status of costly antiques. A legacy to future generations, the artifact museum would function as a "hands-on" reference tool to those interested in the daily life of the community's past. Social studies and vocational arts (or agriculture) classes could cooperate in establishing the artifact museum on school premises, perhaps in the industrial arts building. Items on display could be either outright donations to the school or else "on loan."

*IDEA 19*  
*Enigmas from Grandmother's Attic: An Artifact Trunk*



Students seek out and bring to class obscure historical artifacts from their "grandmothers' attics" (so to speak).

These are things of obscure usage—historical "junk" of dubious function, often of a mechanical nature. This project makes local history palpable—something that can be handled and manipulated. These obsolete technological artifacts offer insight into the daily lives of the students' grandparents. The teacher could gradually accumulate an "artifact trunk" or box full of items to be used in this fashion. Artifacts placed in the trunk or brought to class "on loan" during class projects might include kitchen tools, smaller farming implements, etc.—in fact, almost any kind of physical object.

**Alternatives:** Items could be brought to class on loan or donated outright to the class "trunk." Students could try to find articles that would stump their classmates as to what they are and what they were used for (a "20 questions" format, possibly). The replica *Sears 1897 Catalogue* could serve the teacher and class as a basic reference to the objects, and students could try to find out more about them by talking to older relatives. If every student brought at least one item, the project would produce a "class museum" of strange "past things" that students could touch, play with, and conjecture about—a "Hands-On Past."

In addition, the artifact collection could be used in the class room (1) in a study of the history of technology, as evidence about the changes in technology and to examine the relationships between technology and the rest of society, and (2) as clues to the nature of social change (many



of these devices were invented to meet social needs that are now forgotten—the object can be used to discover the social need).

Possible foci for studying artifacts are:

- the relationships between “form and function,”
- the idea of “cultural survivals” (objects or practices persisting with new functions after old ones disappear),
- the idea of “style” and “stylistic change,” and
- the evolution of artifacts over time (and whether this was improvement and/or merely stylistic change).

Students can be taught an inquiry process in which they “read” artifacts—moving from an examination of an object’s “form” to its “inferred function” to the “inferred social meaning” of the object, and finally to inferences about the kind of society the object served.

### IDEA 20

#### *Introduction to Antiques*



An introduction to antiques (furniture, glassware, old firearms, tools, etc.) is combined with a student survey of the “family homes” to which they have access.

This project combines the study of “artifacts as social history” with the motivation of the treasure hunt. The teacher begins with suitable reference books and some knowledge of local antiques. Classroom study of the categories and styles of furniture, glassware, and other varieties of local material culture (antiques) culminates in students’ search for valuable items in their own houses and in those of relatives. The inherent interest of social history is thus linked to the fascination of the “treasure hunt.” Students later report the survey results to the class.

Alternatives: Old dumps (“middens”) often contain valuable collector’s items in bottles and other glassware. Students might wish to explore them alone or in teams. Throughout the project, the classroom could serve as a “collection point” for smaller items from home and “midden” brought in to be identified and displayed. Interesting artifacts too large for the classroom exhibit could be recorded on photographs for later study.

### IDEA 21

#### *A Family History Notebook*



Students complete a relatively unstructured assignment by compiling a notebook or scrapbook of family history.



In addition to satisfying a school project requirement, the notebook provides a useful resource for the student and his or her family. Possible items for the notebook include: old documents, photographs, newspaper clippings, genealogical outlines and/or traditions, family folklore of various sorts (songs, stories, etc.), and an “historical inventory” of documents, photos, “heirlooms,” and antiques. The notebook would be a compendium of the student’s research into his or her family history. Students might place their family history notebooks on display at the school.

*IDEA 22*  
*Writing a Family Oral Life-History*



With the aid of a cassette tape recorder, students record, transcribe, and edit an oral life-history of a grandfather, grandmother, or some other (non-related) individual of their grandparents’ generation—that person’s own story told in his or her own words.

There are many possibilities available for such a project, and it could be approached in a variety of ways.

**Alternatives:** The student could work with his or her subject to create a complete autobiography of the person’s life, or a more detailed account of some portion of that life history. Excellent models for the “Oral Life-History” may be found in the various *Foxfire* books published by Doubleday. The life history could incorporate photographs and documents pertaining to the subject. One kind of study (within either of the above categories) would follow a topical focus through the subject’s life—the grandfather’s life as a farmer, for example. In all cases, this life-history project involves the student in basic field research among his/her own family and friends.

*IDEA 23*  
*Reading an Historical Building: A Field Project*



A class field trip to an historic old house, with emphasis upon studying the house as an “historical artifact” of nineteenth-century family and social history.

Thinking about the old house in this way, students “brainstorm” questions with which to frame their observations of the house. During the visit, they formulate conclusions to their questions. This exercise focuses on the powers of observation—a “Sherlock Holmes” attempt to *read* the house as historical evidence. After the tour, the students compare opinions and generally “de-brief” one another.

**Alternatives:** An important part of this project involves the preparation of relevant questions; students should be allowed to arrive at these during class discussion.



Possible questions relevant to the family and social history of an old house include (among others):

- What are its more flexible and its more specialized living spaces?
- Which is “public” family space and “private” individual space in it?
- What does the selection and arrangement of furnishings and possessions indicate about past residents?
- Is there any evidence here about patterns of kinship and family relationships within this family and this society?
- Is there evidence about the pattern and pace of work that went on?
- How would economic change affect this family?
- Can you imagine the sensory experience of living in this house—smells, sights, sounds, tastes?
- What is the overall impression or “feel” of the house—pleasant, gloomy, pretentious, etc.?
- What access to the surrounding neighborhood does this house offer? To the community at large?
- How does the house relate to the surrounding environment?
- Is it set back from the road and screened off from neighbors, etc.?
- Did the family who lived here use the front or back yard as “living space,” or just as a buffer?
- How does this house differ from the “average” present-day house, and why?
- Which differences derive from technological changes (i.e., electricity and air conditioning), and which are due to economic and “stylistic” changes? What were the functions of the various internal spaces in the house?
- Were there rooms kept “just for show” and rooms where most of the living went on?
- Could the house design provoke family conflict?

#### IDEA 24

#### *Topographic Map Studies: “The County Speed Game”*



This game familiarizes students with county topographic maps.

This game follows several days of work during which the students become quite familiar with county topographic maps and their symbols. Competing teams (or individuals) would be given



the following items: the game topographic map, a 240-inch piece of kite string marked off in quarter inches, scotch tape (or tacks), a pencil, and a notepad. In a "play" of the game, the teacher would say (choosing a simple example): "Go from Taylorsville crossroads to the McNeil School." The student teams would then engage in the "county speed game." They would:

- > locate their starting point and destination on the map (this can be quite difficult—for example, "Go from the small marsh 6 ½ miles SSW of Gravel Springs School to . . .," etc.);
- > then, plot the fastest route from start to finish, based on the following figures. Each ¼ inch across country takes three minutes. (For example, on a one-inch-to-mile map, this represents a foot speed of twelve minutes to the mile.) Each ¼ inch on an unimproved road takes one minute. Each ¼ inch on a farm road takes ½ minute. Each ¼ inch on a highway takes ¼ minute.
- > After plotting the fastest route, students carefully (but lightly) tape their string to the map following the chosen course.
- > When the last segment of the "route string" is down, the student team signals "home" and the teacher checks each team's route and computed time in minutes. The other team (or teams) goes on working to be checked next. Only if it is not ready by the end of the teacher's check of the first team is it disqualified. If the second team is "home" by the end of the teacher's check of team one, and if it has worked out a faster route, then the second team wins.

### IDEA 25

#### *Creating a County Time/Space Framework*



In conjunction with a "local history unit," students make a county "time/space framework."

- Needed are:
- ☛ a large outline map of the home county (copied from the county road map or topographic map), and
  - ☛ a long sheet of blank paper—perhaps 15 to 20 feet long. Butcher's paper would be ideal.

Both are posted on the classroom wall. The "time line" is marked off in years, from earliest times to the present. As classroom study goes on, locations are noted on the map and dates are marked on the time line. Information about an event is noted on two slips of paper that are pinned to their appropriate locations in time (the time line) and in space (the map).

- Alternatives: Students could put personal notes on the "framework"—birth dates and birth-places, etc. "Historical" newspaper clippings could be pinned to the time line, etc. As the local history unit progresses, the past will visibly "gather" on the time/space framework.



*IDEA 26*  
*Personal Document Collection*



Students bring in family documents to be duplicated, laminated (or otherwise preserved), and accumulated in a "classroom document collection."

These "primary sources" of local history could then be used by the teacher in a variety of student assignments. Materials copied should be brief, interesting, and evocative of the past, but in general they could be anything—personal letters, wills, deeds, shopping lists, etc. The originals would be handled with extreme care and returned to the students' families.

*IDEA 27*  
*Student Historical Photographs*



Students put together photojournalism essays in county history.

Many possible subjects exist for photographic study—old bridges, historic buildings, the architectural details of a single building, folk crafts (such as sugar making), etc. These photojournalism studies examine a "visible history" of the home county.

Alternatives: The teacher might specify the number of slides or prints in the project, delimit topics, and require some kind of accompanying text with the photos. The student projects might be placed on general display in the school.

*IDEA 28*  
*Constructing a Time Capsule*



Students make a "time capsule" intended to be opened by themselves or by their children at some predetermined future date.

A time capsule follows the "message in the bottle" idea, except the capsule moves through time and not space. Students choose a suitable container and decide what to include—what "message" they want to send. Students could collectively discuss:

- ⇒ what to include,
- ⇒ the message they want to send themselves or their children, and
- ⇒ the most useful things for adults (or children) of the future to know about students of today, etc.



Before the "sealing ceremony" (and the teacher should contrive some means of really sealing the capsule), students could display the "non-personal" portion of the capsule's contents. The capsule is then sealed and launched into time.

Alternatives: The students could explore the idea of history itself as a sort of time capsule, capriciously allowing some information to pass through time to the present, while allowing other information to be lost.

*IDEA 29*  
*Family History: Roots*



As an introduction or component of a larger family history assignment, students talk with their oldest family members and collect family historical traditions of the greatest possible "time depth."

These would be the oldest traditions about the family and its origins—the stories told to students' grandparents by their grandparents. Students seek to discover and record oral traditions that go back as many generations as possible and relate to the origins of the family. These traditions might be of several sorts—stories about what happened to the family on the way to Texas, old songs or personal anecdotes, etc.—but the idea is to explore the ultimate limits of each family's "oral folk history." For Alex Haley, the author of *Roots*, these were words and phrases from a West African language, and traditions about "an African," so students should be optimistic! Students write down or tape-record (or remember) these materials, and bring them to share with the class.

*IDEA 30*  
*Creating a Personal Time Line*



Each student gets a long piece of paper and marks it off in uniform measurements corresponding to the years of his or her life.

On this "time line" (which may be several sheets of notebook paper taped or glued together), the students record the events of their lives, beginning with the earliest memories and proceeding, year by year, to the present. Students should be encouraged to turn to parents and grandparents for additional information about their lives. The time line should be as detailed as possible.

Several days should be spent constructing the "time line" since students will discover:

- \* some people can remember much more than others, but
- \* everyone can remember much more than he thinks he can, given a sustained effort.



This assignment attempts "total recall," and the resulting time line could be very interesting to the student later in life. It could also prove interesting to the teacher, for example:

- \* What do children, or adolescents, remember about their lives, when they are still children or adolescents?
- \* Do later "adult" life experiences "wipe out" or replace a lot of these memories?

*IDEA 31*  
*Old Phonograph Records*



Students locate old phonograph records of popular music and bring them to class to be taped.

The records serve as a "primary source" for community, social, and intellectual life in bygone decades. They may be analyzed as evidence for changes in musical content, style, and technology. A class could analyze song titles, topics, and texts for evidence of changing attitudes, values, and social concerns across time. Alternatively, they could just experience the music as a "time warp" into an earlier day. The music on the old phonograph records could be transferred to cassette tapes for repeated usage in the classroom.

*IDEA 32*  
*Student Fieldwork in Folklore*



Students collect and compile a variety of folkloric materials (stories, songs, "sayings," jokes, riddles, legends, superstitions, etc.) from their peers, families, ethnic groups, and the community at large.

Folklore, the "verbal folk art" of the community, is transmitted orally, person-to-person, and is not written down. It varies from ethnic group to ethnic group and from generation to generation (students, for example, have their own folklore). Students and teacher choose a folklore project they wish to embark upon, the target group from which to collect the materials (in writing or on tape), and bring them to class for compilation. Collected materials could be retained by the teacher as a steadily accumulating classroom resource.

Alternatives: Some general categories of folklore are: ghost stories, tall tales, riddles, jokes, skip-rope rhymes, weather signs, "old sayings," folk remedies, "luck," superstitions, graffiti, songs, "lore" about animals, etc. Project possibilities include:

- student research among the students' families to collect folklore from older (and younger) family members, especially the grandparents—a "family folklore" project;



- an emphasis on folkloric materials collected from older (or younger) members of different ethnic communities—for example, an examination of the differences and similarities in Black, Anglo and Mexican American folklore;
- student collections of “children’s folklore” (skip-rope rhymes, riddles, etc.) from their younger brothers and sisters; and
- collections of the current folklore among students’ peer groups within the school, beginning with what students in the class already know. (For example, do students know the story about “the guy who grew claws,” or the “devil’s appearance in the roadhouse?” These are common stories in the Austin public schools. And this makes another point. Folklore is not just “old stuff”—“living” folklore is at least halfway believed in!)

*IDEA 33*  
*The Place-Name Game*



This game is a project that utilizes topographic maps of the home county as a basic historical resource for studying county history. Map studies can supplement a general unit in county (local) history or an independent unit in geography. Students first could study map symbols, topography, etc., and learn to read the maps. A variety of possible topics on “cultural geography” may then be targeted for study: Why are settlements, roads, or railroads where they are? What are the relationships of existing settlements to surface water supplies? Why are certain areas sparsely populated? Which settlements are predominantly Anglo, Mexican American, Black, etc.?

**Alternatives:** After a day or two on map study, students could test their new knowledge of the county in map games.

> **The Place-Name Game.** Students compete one-on-one or in teams. The map is either marked off in longitude/latitude lines (“open map” version) or marked off in quadrants (“closed map” version). The student or team that is “up” serves a place-name to a student (or team) that is in “scoring position.” A correct answer (the right longitude/latitude, or the right quadrant, within 30 seconds) scores points for that student or team. Then the team in scoring position is served another place-name, continuing until it “misses.” (This simple game can be assimilated to a “baseball” or “football” format and complicated in various ways.)

> The map games could be continued with other suggested ideas that utilize topographic maps—the “place-name study,” the “Master History Map,” etc.



*IDEA 34*  
*A Multi-Ethnic Cookbook*  
*(How to Have Your History and Eat It Too!)*



Students collect, compile, and publish a multi-ethnic cookbook of community recipes.

The emphasis should be upon obtaining the recipes for ethnically distinctive foods—family formulas passed down from generation to generation. Along with each recipe, the cookbook should include:

- the student who collected it,
- the name of the person (or family) from whom the recipe was collected,
- family traditions (history) associated with the recipe, and
- any particular cultural significance attached to the recipe (i.e., preparation on a certain holiday, such as black-eyed peas for good luck on New Year's Day).

Thus, the recipes are used as an introduction to the study of local history and to ethnic variation in that history. The results of this research are compiled in a "Multi-Ethnic Cookbook" as a tangible and useful product of the students' work.

*IDEA 35*  
*Making an Anthropological Kinship Chart*



Students construct a kinship chart for relatives living and dead, reckoning all relationships from themselves as "ego."

Students work with parents and grandparents to make the chart as complete as possible. Males are designated with triangles, females with a circle. Double horizontal lines indicate a marriage relationship. Vertical single lines are lines of descent (parents to children). Single horizontal lines connect brothers and/or sisters. Symbols should be labeled with the person's name, the kinship term for his relationship to "ego" (the student making the chart), and the person's birth (and death) dates. The kinship chart serves as a handy reference for the student's other family history researches, making family relationships clear at a glance. It reveals the "structure" of the student's family and opens the door to a general study of the cultural nature of our kinship system. We are biologically related to a variety of persons, but those relationships are culturally defined. For example, the persons covered by our kinship term "uncle" stand in two very different biological relationships to the student. One, the mother's or father's brother is related by blood; the other, the mother's or father's sister's husband, is related by marriage.



**Alternatives:** Other kinship topics include the study of fictive or ceremonial relationships in other cultures, etc. Hence, the chart may serve both as a family history reference and as point of departure for a study of kinship and kinship systems in general.

### IDEA 36

#### *The Auction Game—Circa 1897*



The teacher displays a replica *Sears 1897 Catalogue* with all the items covered except the image of one object; students try to guess what the object is, how it was used, and how much it cost in 1897.

The image of an artifact can function in much the same way as the actual object (see “Enigmas from Grandmother’s Attic”). This project explores community social history circa 1897 by way of the objects—the “material culture”—representing daily life at that time. Thus, the Sears replica catalogues offer a marvelous historical reference for discovering and interpreting this “daily life.”

### IDEA 37

#### *Then-Now Home Research*



This is a series of student field-research projects in the cultural (social) history of the home country, “then” as opposed to “now.”

Students use their knowledge about present-day cultural practices (now) as the point of departure for field research into the way those same things were done in the past (then). They explore the past dimension of their research topics by interviewing their own grandparents and/or other adults of their grandparents’ generation. These “home research” projects require fieldwork in the student’s own family and ethnic community. The research begins with an analysis of the chosen topic in the present. (For example, students ask themselves, “What is the contemporary pattern of courtship and marriage, food preservation, etc.?) As they gather information about the “then” aspect of their research topics, the students keep field notes based upon their informants’ testimonies. Then they write a brief essay of comparison and contrast, comparing the way things were done circa 1915 with the way they are done presently.

**Alternatives:** Possible topics for the “then-now” explorations of community life are almost limitless: farming, food preservation, belief in ghosts, political attitudes, home heating and cooling, transportation, celebrations and how to celebrate them (Cinco de Mayo, Christmas, Juneteenth, Fourth of July, Halloween), customs of group relationships, etc.—the possibilities are endless. To the greatest extent possible, students should choose and explore topics of personal interest to them.



IDEA 38  
*Multi-Cultural Compilations*



This project extends the pattern of the "Multi-Ethnic Cookbook" into other areas of social life; students collect, compile, and publish multi-cultural materials on a variety of topics.

The basic pattern underlying this project idea includes the following elements:

- > an emphasis on cultural differences as positive—as a resource and enrichment of community life,
- > field research by the students on their chosen topic among older members of their ethnic group,
- > bringing the gathered material to class and "identifying with it" in some way (showing it, performing it, reciting it, describing it), and
- > compiling the material into a "product" of some sort, perhaps a mimeographed publication with copies going to every student's family.

The teacher keeps a copy of the final product as an accumulative resource for teaching local history/ethnic studies.

Alternatives: The *Foxfire* books offer many topic ideas for these tri-cultural projects. Some project ideas include:

- > recipes,
- > wild foods (how to locate, identify, process, cook),
- > ghost stories,
- > hunting stories,
- > weather signs (planting),
- > customs of courtship and marriage,
- > funeral practices,
- > child-rearing beliefs and practices,
- > folk medicine,
- > stories and beliefs about animals,
- > riddles and jokes,
- > "old sayings,"
- > celebrations and how to celebrate them,
- > old folk songs,



- > stories about outlaws and “bad men,”
- > traditions about what’s “lucky” and “unlucky,”
- > beliefs about dreams and dream interpretations,
- > slang expressions, and
- > inter-ethnic group attitudes.

There are many other possibilities. (Note: It is suggested that students record the materials they collect as nearly as possible to the way their informants relate them—“word for word,” or close to it.)

### IDEA 39

#### *Living History: Classroom Interviews of Community Informants*



Students locate people in the community who have had unique life experiences, practice special skills, work in areas of unusual expertise (i.e., blacksmiths, trappers, cowboys), or otherwise have valuable firsthand knowledge about the community’s past. These unique and knowledgeable people are invited to a classroom interview.

This would be an exploration of county history through direct, face-to-face interaction with the persons who lived and experienced that history. Students recruit these resource persons among their own relatives and acquaintances. A list could be compiled of persons willing to come to the classroom, along with the frequency with which they would attend (once? twice?), and their special area of expertise. Each visit includes the following sequence:

- teacher and students decide on a topic or topics of interest,
- students locate a person or persons knowledgeable about the topic and willing to be interviewed by the class,
- students talk to parents and grandparents regarding the topic and otherwise gather information about it prior to the visit,
- students discuss, develop, and select “intelligent questions” to ask the informant during the classroom discussion,
- the resource person visits the classroom and is interviewed, and then
- the class engages in a post-visit debriefing of the interview.

If possible, the interview should be taped for future reference and/or classroom use. (Note: the visitor is doing the class a big favor, so the interview setting should be as low-key, informal, and friendly as possible. The visitor should be treated in such a way as to make him/her willing to return to this or another classroom.)



IDEA 40  
*Mapping Personal Turf*



Students design detailed maps of their home neighborhoods.

The sophistication of these mappings will vary according to grade level, previously acquired map skills, etc. The map could be to scale and use standard map symbols, but this is optional. The basic idea requires students to compose a map of their neighborhood, their personal "turf," the part of the world they know best. The map should show as much detail as possible, including houses, streets, trails, hideouts and other secret places, natural features, the locations of significant happenings, etc. Students should include all the current "micro-place names" given to parts of their home neighborhoods and presently in common use among their age group. The assignment is relatively unstructured and highly creative, and students should feel free to select map colors and general layout. The assignment should last at least two days—preferably more. Students would "field research" their projects between classes, returning each day to school with more information to incorporate into their map. This exercise examines both cultural geography and local history and requires students to carefully examine everything they know about the most familiar part of their home environment. "Mapping Personal Turf" is an exploration of the personal meaning of place.

Alternatives: Sophistication of the map would vary according to basic map skills, as would the extent of the area covered by the map. The students could do a tentative preliminary sketch from memory, check it out and then begin the real map on the next school day. Younger students will make up for lack of area in their "home turf" with (probably) the greater detail of their knowledge. They should put in everything—"kids' trails," secret places, the names they have given to parts of the landscape, things seen and unseen. Their maps should become the "mental landscape" of this childhood home territory.

IDEA 41  
*Publish a Local Foxfire Magazine*



Begin publication of a local oral-history/folklore magazine patterned upon the student journal, *Foxfire*. Work on the magazine could go on during Texas history, American history, journalism, or English classes, or in special classes set up to research and publish the magazine. Over two hundred *Foxfire*-like magazines are now publishing around the country, many of them with considerable commercial success. (For information about starting a local "Foxfire project," interested persons may contact any of the excellent Texas-based journals. For example: *Loblolly*, Gary High School, Box 88, Gary, Texas 75643; *Chinquapin*, Douglass School, Box 38, Douglass, Texas 75943; *Old Timer*, Albany High School, Box 188, Albany, Texas 76430.)



*IDEA 42*  
*Organize a Junior Historian or Webb Chapter*



Organize an honorary chapter of Junior Historians in the public secondary schools and/or a Webb Chapter in the local college or university. (For further information on how to go about this, write: Texas State Historical Association, 2,306 Sid Richardson Hall, The University of Texas, Austin, Texas 78712.)

*IDEA 43*  
*A Local History Project in Association with the Community Newspaper*



Approach the local newspaper with the idea of having your class (or classes, or school) research and write a special column on community (or county) history to appear at intervals during the school year. These columns will present brief historical essays on various interesting topics. Assuming things go well, the newspaper staff complete only the final editing.

*IDEA 44*  
*A Personal Family History Test*



As introduction to a unit in family or local history, students complete a (non-graded) "personal history test."

Test Questions:

1. What is your father's full name? (first, last, and anything in between)
2. Where was he born—town, state, or county?
3. What is his birthday? (day, month, and the year)
4. What is your mother's full name? (first, last, middle, and maiden)
5. Where was she born? (town, county, or state)
6. What is her birthdate? (Does she try to keep it a secret?)
7. What are the names of your grandparents? (father's father, father's mother, mother's father, mother's mother)
8. Where (town, state, or county) and when (year, at least) were each of your grandparents born?



9. What are (or were) the occupations of all your grandparents?
10. From which country did your father's family come originally? (Unless you are a Native American, they came from somewhere else.)
11. From which country did your mother's family come originally? (Is there a clue in one of those family names?)
12. When did your ancestors (on both sides) first come to this country?
13. Where did they enter this country?
14. What was the first place they settled? (town or state)
15. Which cities or states has your family lived in?
16. How did the town you live in (near) get its name?
17. Who or what lived there before it became a town?
18. Why does your town happen to be where it is?

15 or more right = EXCELLENT!

10 or more right = GOOD.

5 or more (or less) = TRY AGAIN!

\*\*\*\*\*

# TEACHING TEXAS HISTORY

Printing courtesy of the Houston Chronicle

**Readers are leaders**  
**The Chronicle** IN EDUCATION



U.S. Department of Education  
Office of Educational Research and Improvement (OERI)  
Educational Resources Information Center (ERIC)



# REPRODUCTION RELEASE

(Specific Document)

## I. DOCUMENT IDENTIFICATION:

Title: Teaching Texas History: An All Level Resource Guide	
Author(s): David C. DeBoe	
Corporate Source: Texas State Historical Association 27.306 Sid Richardson Hall, University <del>Hall</del> Station, Austin, TX 78712	Publication Date: 1996

## II. REPRODUCTION RELEASE:

In order to disseminate as widely as possible timely and significant materials of interest to the educational community, documents announced in the monthly abstract journal of the ERIC system, *Resources in Education* (RIE), are usually made available to users in microfiche, reproduced paper copy, and electronic/optical media, and sold through the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS) or other ERIC vendors. Credit is given to the source of each document, and, if reproduction release is granted, one of the following notices is affixed to the document.

If permission is granted to reproduce and disseminate the identified document, please CHECK ONE of the following two options and sign at the bottom of the page.

The sample sticker shown below will be affixed to all Level 1 documents.

The sample sticker shown below will be affixed to all Level 2 documents.



Check here  
For Level 1 Release:  
Permitting reproduction in microfiche (4" x 6" film) or other ERIC archival media (e.g., electronic or optical) and paper copy.

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE AND DISSEMINATE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

\_\_\_\_\_

*Sample*

\_\_\_\_\_

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

Level 1



Check here  
For Level 2 Release:  
Permitting reproduction in microfiche (4" x 6" film) or other ERIC archival media (e.g., electronic or optical), but not in paper copy.

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE AND DISSEMINATE THIS MATERIAL IN OTHER THAN PAPER COPY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

\_\_\_\_\_

*Sample*

\_\_\_\_\_

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

Level 2

Documents will be processed as indicated provided reproduction quality permits. If permission to reproduce is granted, but neither box is checked, documents will be processed at Level 1.

"I hereby grant to the Educational Resources Information Center (ERIC) nonexclusive permission to reproduce and disseminate this document as indicated above. Reproduction from the ERIC microfiche or electronic/optical media by persons other than ERIC employees and its system contractors requires permission from the copyright holder. Exception is made for non-profit reproduction by libraries and other service agencies to satisfy information needs of educators in response to discrete inquiries."

Sign here → please

Signature: <i>David DeBoe</i>	Printed Name/Position/Title: David DeBoe, Director of Education	
Organization/Address: Texas State Historical Assoc. 2/306 Sid Richardson Hall University Station Austin, TX 78712	Telephone: 512/432-1501	FAX: 512/471-1551
	E-Mail Address: ddeb@erica.edu	Date: 2/7/97

### III. DOCUMENT AVAILABILITY INFORMATION (FROM NON-ERIC SOURCE):

If permission to reproduce is not granted to ERIC, or, if you wish ERIC to cite the availability of the document from another source, please provide the following information regarding the availability of the document. (ERIC will not announce a document unless it is publicly available, and a dependable source can be specified. Contributors should also be aware that ERIC selection criteria are significantly more stringent for documents that cannot be made available through EDRS.)

Publisher/Distributor:	Texas State Historical Ass'n
Address:	21306 Richardson Hall UT Station Austin, TX 78712
Price:	\$15.95; Shipping and Handling: \$4.00 for 1st book + .75¢ for each additional

### IV. REFERRAL OF ERIC TO COPYRIGHT/REPRODUCTION RIGHTS HOLDER:

If the right to grant reproduction release is held by someone other than the addressee, please provide the appropriate name and address:

Name:	N/A
Address:	

### V. WHERE TO SEND THIS FORM:

Send this form to the following ERIC Clearinghouse:
---

However, if solicited by the ERIC Facility, or if making an unsolicited contribution to ERIC, return this form (and the document being contributed) to:

ERIC Processing and Reference Facility  
1301 Piccard Drive, Suite 100  
Rockville, Maryland 20850-4305

Telephone: 301-258-5500  
FAX: 301-948-3695  
Toll Free: 800-799-3742  
e-mail: ericfac@inet.ed.gov